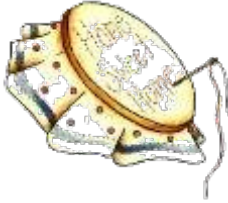


AVOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
artisan /ˌɑːtiˈzæn/ (n)	nghệ nhân, thợ làm nghề thủ công		These vases were made by local artisans. Những chiếc bình này được tạo ra bởi những nghệ nhân địa phương.
authenticity /ˌɔːθenˈtɪsəti/ (n)	tính chính xác, tính xác thực, thật		You should check the authenticity of the product before purchasing it. Bạn nên kiểm tra tính xác thực của sản phẩm trước khi mua nó.
birthplace /ˈbɜːθpleɪs/ (n)	nơi sinh ra, quê hương		Japan is the birthplace of origami. Nhật Bản là quê hương của nghệ thuật gấp giấy.
deal with /diːl wɪð/ (v)	giải quyết		You may have to deal with many problems. Bạn có thể phải giải quyết rất nhiều vấn đề.
embroider /ɪmˈbrɔɪdə(r)/ (v)	thêu		She embroidered floral patterns on the dress. Cô ấy thêu họa tiết hoa lên chiếc váy.
face up to /feɪs ʌp tu/ (v)	đối mặt với		You have to face up to your shortcomings. Bạn phải đối mặt với những thiếu sót của bạn.

get on with /get ɒn wið/	có quan hệ tốt với		<p>Mary gets on with all her co-workers.</p> <p>Mary có mối quan hệ tốt với tất cả đồng nghiệp.</p>
knit /nit/ (v)	đan (len, sợi)		<p>Last year, my grandmother knitted me a sweater.</p> <p>Năm ngoái, bà tôi đan cho tôi một cái áo len.</p>
lacquerware /'lækə(r)weə(r)/ (n)	món nghiền		<p>My father is highly interested in Japanese lacquerware.</p> <p>Bố tôi rất hứng thú với đồ sơn mài Nhật Bản.</p>
look forward to /lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tu/	trông mong		<p>I am looking forward to the upcoming festival.</p> <p>Tôi đang trông mong lễ hội sắp tới.</p>
marble sculpture /'mɑ:bl 'skʌlptʃə(r)/	điêu khắc đá		<p>Marble sculpture is the art of creating three-dimensional forms from marble.</p> <p>Điêu khắc đá là nghệ thuật tạo ra những khối ba chiều từ đá.</p>
memorable /'memərəbl/ (adj)	đáng nhớ		<p>My town is memorable for its stunning beaches.</p> <p>Thành phố của tôi rất đáng nhớ bởi những bãi biển tuyệt đẹp.</p>
pass down /pɑ:s daʊn/	truyền lại		<p>These skills are passed down from father to son.</p> <p>Những kĩ năng này được truyền từ cha tới con.</p>
set off /set ɒf/	khởi hành		<p>When will you set off to Paris?</p> <p>Khi nào bạn sẽ khởi hành đi Paris?</p>

Định nghĩa	- Câu phức là câu bao gồm 1 mệnh đề độc lập (independent clause) và ít nhất 1 mệnh đề phụ thuộc (dependent clause) liên kết với nhau. Hai mệnh đề thường được nối với nhau bởi dấu phẩy hoặc các liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinating conjunctions).
Ví dụ	<p><u>He always takes time to play with his daughter</u>even though<u>he is extremely busy.</u></p> <div>Mệnh đề độc lập Mệnh đề phụ thuộc</div> <p>(Anh ấy luôn dành thời gian để chơi với con gái mặc dù anh ấy rất bận rộn.) Even though<u>he is busy, he always takes time to play with his daughter.</u></p> <div>Mệnh đề phụ thuộc Mệnh đề độc lập</div> <p>(Mặc dù anh ấy bận rộn, nhưng anh ấy luôn dành thời gian để chơi với con gái.) <u>You should think about money saving from now</u>if<u>you want to study abroad.</u></p> <div>Mệnh đề độc lập Mệnh đề phụ thuộc</div> <p>(Bạn nên nghĩ về việc tiết kiệm tiền từ bây giờ nếu bạn muốn đi du học.) If<u>you want to study abroad, you should think about money saving from now.</u></p> <div>Mệnh đề phụ thuộc Mệnh đề độc lập</div> <p>(Nếu bạn muốn đi du học, bạn nên nghĩ về việc tiết kiệm tiền từ bây giờ.)</p>
Lưu ý	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mệnh đề đi liền với liên từ trong câu phức chính là mệnh đề phụ thuộc (dependent clause). Nếu mệnh đề phụ thuộc (dependent clause) nằm phía trước mệnh đề độc lập (independent clause) thì giữa 2 mệnh đề phải có dấu phẩy, còn lại thì không .

After (Sau khi)	Although (Mặc dù)	As (Bởi vì/ Khi)	as if (Như thể là)	as long as (Miễn là)	In order to (cố gắng để mà)
Before (Trước khi)	Even if (Mặc dù)	Because (Bởi vì)	as though (Như thể là)	as much as	so that (cố gắng để mà)
Once (Một khi)	even though (Mặc dù)	Whereas (Trong khi đó)	If (Nếu)	as soon as (Ngay khi)	Unless (trừ phi)

(Kể từ khi/ Bởi vì)	Though (Mặc dù)	While (Trong khi đó)	In case (Nếu)	When (Khi)	Until (Cho đến khi)
---------------------	--------------------	-------------------------	------------------	---------------	------------------------

3. Các loại mệnh đề phụ thuộc hay gặp

Trong câu phức, có nhiều loại mệnh đề phụ thuộc khác nhau, dưới đây là một vài loại thường gặp.

Mệnh đề phụ thuộc	Ví dụ
Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ lý do (dependent clause of reason): - trả lời cho câu hỏi "Why" (tại sao) - thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: because, since, as...	- I needn't tell you <u>as he has told you already</u> . (Tôi không cần kể cho anh vì cậu ấy đã kể cho anh rồi.) - I did it <u>because there was no one else to do it</u> . (Tôi làm điều đó vì không còn ai để làm nữa.) - Since you insist, I shall go with you. (Vianh cứ năn nỉ, tôi sẽ đi với anh.)
Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ thời gian (dependent clause of time): -nói về thời gian hành động trong mệnh đề độc lập diễn ra khi nào. -thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: when, while, before, after, as soon as,...	- <u>As I went out</u> , he came in. (Khi tôi đi ra thì anh ta vào.) - <u>As soon as you are ready</u> , we shall go. (Ngaykhi cậu sẵn sàng chúng ta sẽ đi.) - I hurried to see him <u>after I had heard the news</u> . (Tôi vội đến gặp anh ấy sau khi nghe tin.) - I hope to pay him a visit <u>before I went away</u> . (Tôi hy vọng thăm được anh ấy trước khi anh ấy đi.)
- Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ sự nhượng bộ (dependent clause of concession): -diễn tả kết quả bất ngờ, ngoài mong đợi. -thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: although, though, even though, even if...	-Though it is getting late, I think we have to finish our lesson. (Mặc dù đã muộn tôi vẫn nghĩ rằng chúng ta phải làm xong bài.) - <u>Althouah it rained</u> , he went out all the same. (Mặc dù trời mưa anh ta vẫn đi ra ngoài.) - I'll get there even if I have to walk all the day. (Tôi sẽ tới đó, dù cho tôi có phải cuộc bộ suốt cả ngày.)
Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ mục đích (dependent clause of purpose): -nói về mục đích của hành động trong mệnh đề độc lập. -thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: so that, in order that...	He was speaking very quietly <u>so that it was difficult to hear what he said</u> . (Anh ta nói rất khẽ đến nỗi khó có thể nghe được anh ta nói cái gì.)

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

- My mother used to tell me stories _____ I went to bed.
A. since B. until C. before
- You'd better take the keys _____ I'm out
A. in case B. since C. after
- My brother likes eating fried chicken _____ it is very bad for his health.
A. because B. although C. when
- Yesterday, Jim was playing the piano _____ his sister was playing the flute.
A. as B. although C. while
- You shouldn't spend too much time on computer _____ it is harmful to your eyes.
A. as B. when C. although
- I will phone you _____ I get there.
A. while B. as soon as C. until
- The scientist usually works in his lab _____ the sun sets.
A. until B. as soon as C. although
- _____ you promise not to tell lies again, I won't forgive you.
A. If B. Even if C. Unless
- _____ her legs were hurt, she made attempt to finish the running track.
A. Even if B. As if C. Even though
- She talked _____ she witnessed the accident. But in fact she knew nothing.
A. as if B. even though C. even if
- I didn't finish my homework _____ I was seriously ill yesterday.
A. when B. though C. since
- James decides to save money from now _____ he has enough money to travel this summer.
A. so that B. though C. when
- _____ we have been friends for only one year, we deeply understand each other.
A. If B. Though C. Once
- Mr. Smith doesn't like dogs, _____ his wife loves them.
A. when B. so that C. whereas
- I was cycling home yesterday _____ I saw Jim standing near the fountain.
A. when B. while C. since

Bài 2: Hoàn thành những câu sau đây bằng những liên từ cho sẵn.

since	although	while	unless	before
as though	when	as long as	because	in case

- _____ Jim came home, he realized that someone had broken into his house.
- You'd better bring your raincoat _____ rain pours down.

3. They have been colleagues _____ they graduated.
4. _____ Jim puts more effort in his studying, he won't catch up with his classmates.
5. My mother always reminds me to wash my hands _____ I have meals.
6. We will go picnicking _____ the weather is fine.
7. James behaved _____ nothing had happened.
8. I can't make it on Saturday _____ I will be fully occupied.
9. When I got home; my father was mowing the lawn _____ my mother was watering the flower beds.
10. _____ I don't get on well with Mary, I really admire her intelligence and beauty.

Bài 3: Nối những mệnh đề ở cột A với những mệnh đề ở cột B để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

A	B
1. Jane didn't realize her mistake	a. when snow started to fall.
2. They were playing in the backyard	b. though it is distant from our house.
3. if you show your attempt in your work,	c. before they moved here.
4. This couple had been in New York City for 2 years	d. I still travel by public transportations.
5. My mother often shops at the local supermarket	e. so that I will have a decent job in the future.
6. It has been ages	f. you may get promotion soon.
7. I try to study hard	g. until her mother pointed it out for her.
3. Even if I own a car,	h. since we last encountered.

- 1 - _____ 2 - _____ 3 - _____ 4 - _____
 5 - _____ 6 - _____ 7 - _____ 8 - _____

Bài 4: Nối hai câu đơn đã cho thành một câu ghép, sử dụng liên từ thích hợp.

1. Jim was absent from class yesterday. He was suffering from a bad cold.

_____ 2.

They decided to move their house. They don't have to travel a long distance to work.

_____ 3.

Mary hurt her fingers yesterday. She was preparing dinner.

4. At 4pm yesterday, my mother was cleaning the house. I was looking after my younger brother.

_____ 5.
They decided to go on an excursion. They want to get away from work stress.

_____ 6. My
father taught me how to use the computer. Before that, I didn't know how to use it.

7. I arrive at the station. I will call you right after that.

8. My brother is very out-going. I am quite reserved.

_____ 9.
Mr. Peter was walking home. He was robbed of his wallet.

10. I don't have a pet. My mother doesn't allow me to have one.

Bài 4: Điền liên từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành những câu sau:

1. _____ it's pouring with rain, we are going for a walk in the park.
2. _____ she hands in the assignment before Tuesday, she will get very bad mark.
3. He decided to trust Jim this time _____ he was not an honest man.
4. Jennifer decided to break up with Peter _____ he didn't spend much time with her.
5. Danny bought a new car _____ his old car was still in good condition.
6. I will be in great trouble _____ my mother knows my final test scores.
7. Janice will have finished the report _____ the time you receive the letter.
- a. The concert will be canceled _____ no more tickets are sold.
9. Children are not allowed to enter this place _____ they are accompanied by adults.
10. You should bring thick coats _____ the temperature falls at night.
11. _____ my sister doesn't like eating salad, she eats it regularly to keep fit.
12. I won't come to Jim's party _____ he invites me.
13. _____ you tell me the truth, I can't help you.
14. _____ the fire fighters arrived, the fire had already been put out by the local residents.
15. You can leave early _____ you want to.

II CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

1. Định nghĩa

Định nghĩa	Ví dụ
<p>- Cụm động từ (Phrasal verb) là sự kết hợp giữa một động từ và một tiểu từ (particle).</p> <p>-Tiểu từ có thể là một trạng từ (adverb), hay là một giới từ (preposition), hoặc là cả hai, chẳng hạn như back, in, on, off, through, up...</p> <p>-Khi thêm tiểu từ vào sau động từ, cụm động từ thường có ý nghĩa khác hẳn so với động từ ban đầu.</p>	<p>The rich man gave away most of his fortune. (Người giàu ấy tặng hầu hết tài sản của ông ta cho người nghèo.)</p> <p>You can look up any new words in your dictionary. (Anh có thể tra nghĩa bất cứ từ mới nào trong từ điển.)</p> <p>I tried to phone her but I couldn't get through. (Tôi đã cố gắng gọi cho cô ấy nhưng không thể nào kết nối được.)</p>

2. Ý nghĩa phổ biến của các tiểu từ trong các cụm động từ.

Mỗi tiểu từ có thể truyền tải nhiều ý nghĩa khác nhau trong mỗi cụm động từ khác nhau. Tuy nhiên dưới đây là các ý nghĩa phổ biến mà các tiểu từ thường được dùng trong cụm động từ.

Tiểu từ	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
up	Diễn đạt vị trí hướng lên trên hoặc ý kết thúc, hoàn thành tất cả.	We ate all the food up. (Chúng tôi ăn hết thức ăn rồi.)
down	Diễn đạt vị trí hướng xuống dưới; hoặc hành động có xu thế giảm/chặn lại.	We'll have to cut down the expenses. (Chúng ta sẽ phải cắt giảm chi tiêu.)
on	Diễn đạt ý ở trên, dựa trên.	You should put on formal clothes in a meeting. (Cậu nên ăn mặc lịch sự trong cuộc họp)
in	Diễn đạt ý ở trong, xu hướng đi vào trong.	Make sure to leave the office by 5:00 or you will be locked in. (Nhớ là phải rời khỏi văn phòng trước 5h nếu không anh sẽ bị kẹt trong đó.)
out	Diễn đạt vị trí phía ngoài hoặc ý hành động đến tận cuối/cạn kiệt.	I couldn't figure him out. (Tôi không thể nào hiểu nổi anh ấy.)
off	Diễn đạt ý rời đi chỗ khác hoặc thay đổi trạng thái.	I've sent off the letter you wrote to the newspaper. (Tôi đã gửi bức thư mà anh viết cho báo chí rồi.)
for	Diễn đạt mục đích hướng tới của hành động.	He often asks his parents for money. (Anh ấy vẫn thường xuyên hỏi xin tiền bố mẹ.)
with	Diễn đạt ý có người hoặc vật cùng tham	That skirt goes really well with your red coat.

	gia trong hành động.	(Chiếc váy đó rất hợp tông với chiếc áo khoác đỏ của bạn đấy.)
through	Diễn đạt ý lần lượt cái này sang cái khác, hoặc từ đầu đến cuối.	If you look through something, you read it quickly and not very carefully. (Khi bạn đọc qua cái gì đó nghĩa là bạn đọc nhanh và không quá cẩn thận.)
back	Diễn đạt ý trở lại/quay lại.	Please send the jacket back if it is the wrong size. (Hãy gửi lại chiếc áo khoác nếu như sai cỡ.)
away	Diễn đạt trạng thái rời đi, hoặc tạo ra khoảng cách.	Put away your toys, Jack! (Cất đồ chơi đi, Jack.)
around	Diễn đạt hành động mang tính giải trí, không rõ mục đích, hoặc không cần quá tập trung.	I hate the way he lies around all day watching TV. (Tôi ghét cái cách anh ấy cứ nằm vắt vẻo xem TV cả ngày.)

3. Một số cụm động từ thường gặp.

• Cụm động từ kết hợp với 1 tiểu từ

Get up (thức dậy)	Find out (tìm hiểu thông tin)	Bring out (phát hành, ra mắt)
Pass down (truyền lại)	Live on (sống bằng, sống nhờ)	Look through (đọc)
Deal with (xử lý, giải quyết)	Warm up (khởi động)	Come back (quay trở lại)
Turn down (từ chối)	Set up (sắp đặt, chuẩn bị)	Keep up (tiếp tục)
Take off (máy bay cất cánh)	Show off (khoe khoang)	Hold on (chờ đợi)
Give up (từ bỏ)	Grow up (lớn lên)	Go on (tiếp tục)
Break down (đổ vỡ, hư hỏng)	Carry out (thực hiện)	Count on (tin cậy vào)
Dress up (ăn mặc đẹp)	Drop by (ghé qua)	Bring up (nuôi dưỡng)
Work out (tìm ra cách giải quyết)	Close down (đóng cửa hẳn, ngừng kinh doanh)	Take up (bắt đầu làm một hoạt động mới)

• Cụm động từ kết hợp với 2 tiểu từ

Keep up with sb/sth (theo kịp, bắt kịp)	Look forward to sb/sth (trông đợi, mong chờ)	Run out of sth (hết)
Get out of sb/sth (tránh né)	Catch up with sb/sth (bắt kịp)	come down with sth (mắc bệnh gì)
Cut down on sth (cắt giảm)	Look back on sth (nhớ lại)	Get rid of sth (bỏ đi)
Make up for sb/sth (bù đắp cho)	Get back at sb (trả thù ai đó)	Go along with sb (đồng ý với)

Look down on sb (coi thường)	Look up to sb (kính trọng, tôn kính)	Stay away from sb/sth (tránh xa)
Pull over at (đỗ xe)	Run away/ off from sb/sth (chạy trốn)	Wait up for sth (đợi ai đến khuya)
Keep out of sb/sth (ngăn cản)	Go in for sth (tham gia)	Put up with sb/sth (chịu đựng)
Face up to sth (chấp nhận, đương đầu với khó khăn)	Get on with sb (hòa hợp, hòa thuận)	Go through with sth (kiên trì bền bỉ)
Check up on sth (kiểm tra, giám sát)	Make sure of sth (đảm bảo, chắc chắn)	Come up with sth (phát hiện ra, khám phá)

- Sau mỗi cụm động từ thường có **sb/sth**, trong đó: **sb** viết tắt cho **somebody** (người nào đó), **sth**: viết tắt cho **something** (cái gì đó).

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

- They have turned (down/ up) Jim's application for the job.
- You may have to deal (with/ about) many problems in the workplace.
- Small birds mainly live (on/ off) insects.
- When does the place take (off/ up)?
- Why did you decide to take (on/ up) skiing?
- Remember to warm (up/ down) carefully before you play sports.
- There's no need to dress (up/ down). It's just an informal party.
- Have you worked (out/ in) the solution yet?
- Oops, I think we're run out (of/ on) petrol.
- Jim seems not to get (on/ off) well with his classmates.
- My husband has decided to set (up/ down) a business on his own.
- Do you think James will find (out/ up) the truth?
- Does Jim have many friends to count (on/ off) in difficult time?
- Yesterday, my uncle dropped (to/ by) my house to the surprise of everyone.
- Were you brought (up/ in) by your grandparents?

Bài 7: Điền một động từ thích hợp để hoàn thành các câu dưới đây:

- James is quite easy-going. He can _____ on well with many types of people.
- Peter has been absent from school for 2 weeks due to his illness. It may be difficult for him to _____ up with his classmates.
- Did you watch the film last night? Do you know how the villain _____ back on the hero?
- Mr. Smith decided to _____ up smoking because the doctor warned him of getting lung cancer.
- He could _____ with all kinds of people because it was part of his job as a receptionist.
- Jim was sad because Jane _____ down his invitation to the prom.

7. It is important to _____ down our sugar consumption every day.
8. It's time you have to _____ up to these problems on your own.
9. I _____ forward to hearing from you soon.
10. Sometimes I _____ back on my childhood and realize how happy I was as a kid.

Bài 8: Đánh dấu [✓] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu [X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

_____ 1 We have already worked up a new way of doing it.

_____ 2. Jim wants to be a successful writer when he grows out.

_____ 3. We are looking forward to hearing from you soon.

_____ 4. I can't keep up to all the changes in technology nowadays.

_____ 5. The nearby shop will be closed up next month.

_____ 6. The team scored another goal and made sure about championship.

_____ 7. Last year a research on the consequences of water pollution was carried on.

_____ 8. Jim has come up with a brilliant idea to tackle the problem.

_____ 9. Have you ever considered getting rid your bad habits?

_____ 10. The teacher asked us to see through the textbook before she continued.

Bài 9: Hoàn thành các câu sau đây bằng những cụm động từ cho sẵn.

cut down on	deal with	hold on	take up	count on
put up with	turn down	come down with	bring out	check up on

1. This singer will _____ a new album this year.
2. Peter is very reliable. You can _____ him.
3. You should _____ your essay _____ 500 words.
4. Jim is depressed as he has been _____ by five companies so far.
5. I can't _____ such disturbing noise any more.
6. My mother is always _____ me.
7. Mr. Smith has _____ golf.
8. Are you tired of _____ complaints from your customers?
9. How are you now? I heard that you _____ flu last week.

10. _____! I think we've got lost. This isn't the right road.

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho trước và thêm liên từ thích hợp để tạo thành câu phức.

1. Jane/ play/ piano/ extremely/ well/ she/ be/ very/ young.

_____ 2.
Josh/ want/ earn/ more/ money/ he/ apply/ for/ another/ job/ now.

_____ 3. My
mother/ cook/ me/ breakfast/ she/ go/ to/ work.

_____ 4. I/ prefer/ stay/ home/ to/ go/ out/ I/not/ like/ socialize.

_____ 5. Everyone/ enjoy/ the/ party/ last/ right/ food/ be/ not/ so/ good.

_____ 6. Jim/ could/ not/ catch/ up/ with/ his/ classmates/ he/ often/ play/ truant.

_____ 7. Peter/ study/very/ hard. He/can/ get/ high/ scores.

_____ 8. Mary/ of/ my/ friends/ enjoy/ go/ shopping. I/ not/ like/ this.

Bài 11: Thay thế những động từ in nghiêng trong câu bằng một cụm động từ thích hợp.

1. I don't like Josh because he often boasts *about* this wealth. _____

2. Last month many people in my neighbor *had* chickenpox. _____

3. You should *reduce* the amount you salt in your daily meal. _____

4. It's time you *confronted* your fear and moved on. _____

5. Yesterday an old friend of mine *visited* out family. _____

6. Mary decided to *join* the cooking contest. _____

7. I didn't want to go with him, so I *rejected* his invitation. _____

8. They are a well-matched couple and they always *agree* with each other. _____

9. When did you *start* your new hobby? _____

10. The rain *continued* all the morning. _____

Bài 12: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây bằng cách điền từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

1. Peter always look _____ his senior colleagues.
2. Mary is going _____ a singing competition.
3. Nothing can make _____ the loss of my cat.
4. Jim didn't work yesterday because he came _____ flu.
5. My mother always reminds me to stay _____ bad people.
6. As a child I used to wait _____ the present from Santa Clause.
7. I can't _____ put his selfishness any more.
8. They argue a lot, They seem to never get _____ each other.
9. Last year she went _____ an operation.
10. Last week we got _____ all the old furniture and bought new one.

Bài 13: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và viết lại câu đúng.

- _____ 1. Although she didn't warm up carefully before running, her leg was hurt during the race.

- _____ 2. Everyone dressed up though they wanted to be the King or Queen of the prom.

- _____ 3. Since I am really interested in lacquerware, I rarely buy one forme.

- _____ 4. As though my brother and I don't get on well, we still care about the other.

- _____ 5. What would you do unless you won a lottery?

- _____ 6. Mr. Smith is renowned artisan. Everyone looks down on him.

- _____ 7. While I came home, my cat was sleeping on the sofa.

- _____ 8. Because Peter cheated on me, I wouldn't get back on him.

Bài 14: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

A trip to Bat Trang

Last month, my English class went on a field trip to one of the most ancient villages in Viet Nam: Bat Trang. That day all of us got (1) _____ very early (2) _____ we could arrive at the village early in the morning. When we got there, we were all astonished by a variety of ceramic products, most of which are for ordinary use such as bowl, cup, plates and pot. (3) _____ there were up to twenty members in our class, we decided not to join the buffalo tour. Instead, we took a walk for sightseeing and shopping around. (4) _____ we had visited some of the ceramic stores along the road in the village, our teacher took us to Bat Trang Porcelain and Pottery Market. This was the most interesting part of our trip. The local people

instructed us to make pottery products by themselves and introduced the tradition of the village. We were told that pottery-making skills were (5) _____ from generation to generation in the village. (6) _____ we left, the locals gave us small ceramic key chains as souvenirs. We really looked (7) _____ another trip to Bat Trang.

1. A. up B. down C. on D. off
2. A. so B. so that C. since D. though
3. A. so B. so that C. since D. though
4. A. After B. Because C. At last D. While
5. A. turned down B. went in for C. passed down D. brought out
6. A. After B. Before C. At last D. While
7. A. up to B. down on C. forward to
D. forward on

Bài 14: Đọc bài đọc sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Vietnam's Youngest Artisan

Nguyen Tran Hiep, born in Northern province of BacNinh, has become the youngest artisan of Vietnam at the age of 37. He succeeded in developing a large-scale fine-art furniture workshop thanks to an extensive renovation and considerable investment. Before achieving all this, he had gone through with many difficulties in his work.

In 2000, Nguyen Tran Hiep established his own fine-art wood carving workshop, using all of his family's savings and a loan from Bac Ninh province's Youth Union after he had learned about the craft from a famous artisan. Unfortunately, his products could not reach a wide range of customers. At that time, many other people in the village also failed to earn a decent living on making craft and they decided to quit their traditional job. People found jobs and made money many other ways but Hiep didn't give up his dream of developing the traditional craft into a profitable business. He is spending the next years learning and researching the market to find out the most suitable markets for his products. He targeted two types of customers: the first is foreign tourists and the second is traders from China.

For the tourists, his workshop mainly produces small handicrafts and souvenirs, such as small animals, paintings, tea trays, figurines and rosaries. For the Chinese clients, his workshop makes products to order based on the current sample designs. At present, his workshop renamed Hiep Thang Fine arts Cooperative, provides stable jobs for 28 employees with an average income of 4-10 million dong/month.

One of Nguyen Tran Hiep's best works is "Bat Long vong quang phat" which originated from the idea of the eight kings of the Ly dynasty incarnating into eight dragons on a five-colour lotus tower. This work was made to celebrate the 80th anniversary of the founding of the Ho Chi Minh Communist Youth Union and has been listed in the Vietnamese Record Book in 2011 as the best fine-art sculpture of Ideology and art.

1. When was Nguyen Tran Hiep recognized as the Vietnam's Youngest Artisan?

2. Did he easily succeed in developing his fine-art furniture workshop?

3.

How did Hiep categorize his customers?

4. What kinds of products does his workshop often produce for foreigners?

5.

How many employers are there in HiepThang Fine arts Cooperative?

6. What was made by Nguyen Tran Hiep to celebrate the 80th anniversary of the founding of the Ho Chi Minh Communist Youth Union?

UNIT 02

uigeli.xyz

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
ancient /'eɪnʃənt/ (adj)	cổ kính		There is an ancient oak tree in my village. Có một cây sồi cổ thụ ở làng tôi.
cheer (sb) up /tʃiə(r) ʌp/	làm ai đó vui lên		Jane's friends are trying to cheer her up. Những người bạn của Jane đang cố gắng làm cho cô ấy vui vẻ.
drawback /'drɔːbæk/ (n)	mặt hạn chế		The main drawback of this product is its high price. Mặt hạn chế chính của sản phẩm này là giá cả cao của nó.
dweller /'dwelə(r)/ (n)	người dân (ở một khu vực cụ thể)		They used to be city dwellers. Họ đã từng là dân thành thị.
fabulous /'fæbjələs/ (adj)	rất tốt, tuyệt vời		Jenny is a fabulous cook. Jenny là một đầu bếp tuyệt vời.
jet lag /dʒet læg/	sự mệt mỏi do lệch múi giờ		Have you ever experienced jet lag? Bạn đã bao giờ trải nghiệm sự mệt mỏi do lệch múi giờ chưa?
make progress /meɪk 'prɒɡres/	tiến bộ		We have made great progress in controlling pollution. Chúng tôi đã tiến bộ rất nhiều trong việc kiểm soát sự ô nhiễm.

metropolitan /ˌmetrəˈpɒlɪtən/ (adj)	thuộc về thủ đô hoặc thành phố lớn		Do you want to live in a metropolitan city? Bạn có muốn sống ở một thành phố lớn không?
multicultural /ˌmʌltiˈkʌltʃərəl/ (adj)	đa văn hóa		We live in a multicultural society. Chúng ta đang sống ở một xã hội đa văn hóa.
populous /'pɒpjələs/ (adj)	đông dân cư		Hanoi is one of the most populous cities in Vietnam. Hà Nội là một trong những thành phố đông dân nhất Việt Nam.
put on /pʊt ɒn/	mặc vào		He put on a thick coat and went out. Anh ấy mặc áo khoác dày và đi ra ngoài.
recreational /ˌrekriˈeɪʃənəl/ (adj)	giải trí		There are many recreational activities in the city. Có rất nhiều hoạt động giải trí ở thành phố.
reliable /riˈlaɪəbl/ (adj)	đáng tin cậy		We are looking for reliable and hard-working employees. Chúng tôi đang tìm kiếm những nhân viên đáng tin cậy và chăm chỉ.
resident /'rezɪdənt/ (n)	dân cư		The local residents are very friendly toward visitors. Người dân địa phương rất thân thiện với khách du lịch.
urban sprawl /'ɜːbən sprɔːl/	sự đô thị hóa		Fast-growing urban sprawl has caused many problems. Sự đô thị hóa nhanh chóng đã gây ra nhiều vấn đề.

wander /'wɒndə(r)/ (v)	lang thang		He wandered the streets alone yesterday. Anh ấy lang thang một mình trên đường hôm qua.
-------------------------------------	------------	---	--

GRAMMAR IÔN TẬP SO SÁNH VỚI TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS)

1. So sánh hơn với tính từ (Comparative forms of adjectives)

Ta sử dụng so sánh hơn của tính từ để so sánh giữa người (hoặc vật) này với người (hoặc vật) khác. Trong câu so sánh hơn, tính từ sẽ được chia làm hai loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn, trong đó.

- Tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết. **Ví dụ:** tall, high, big,...
- Tính từ dài là những tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên. **Ví dụ:** expensive, intelligent,...

Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn với tính từ

Đối với tính từ ngắn	Đối với tính từ dài
S1 + to be + adj + er + than + S2	S1 + to be + more + adj + than + S2
Với tính từ ngắn, thêm "er" vào sau tính từ	Với tính từ dài, thêm "more" trước tính từ
Ví dụ: China is <u>bigger than</u> India. (Trung Quốc lớn hơn Ấn Độ.) Lan is <u>shorter than</u> Nam. (Lan thì thấp hơn Nam.) My house is <u>bigger than</u> your house. (Nhà của tôi to hơn nhà của bạn) His pen is <u>newer than</u> my pen. (Bút của anh ấy mới hơn bút của tôi)	Ví dụ: Gold is <u>more valuable than</u> silver. (Vàng có giá trị hơn bạc) Hanh is more beautiful than Hoa. (Hạnh thì xinh hơn Hoa.) Your book is more expensive than his book. (Quyển sách của bạn đắt hơn quyển sách của anh ấy.) Exercise 1 is more difficult than exercise 2. (Bài tập số 1 khó hơn bài tập số 2.)
Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh hơn, ta thêm "much/a lot/ a bit/a little/far" vào sau hình thức so sánh. Ví dụ: A DVD is much better than a video for watching films. (Xem phim bằng đĩa DVD thì tốt hơn nhiều so với băng video). Her boyfriend is much/far older than her. (Bạn trai của cô ấy lớn tuổi hơn cô ấy rất nhiều.)	

2. So sánh hơn với trạng từ (Comparative forms of adverbs)

Tương tự như tính từ, trạng từ cũng được chia thành 2 loại:

- Trạng từ ngắn là những từ có 1 âm tiết. **Ví dụ:** hard, fast, near, far, right, wrong,...
- Trạng từ dài là những từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên. **Ví dụ:** slowly, responsibly, quickly, interestingly, tiredly,...

Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn với trạng từ

Đối với trạng từ ngắn	Đối với trạng từ dài
S1 + V + adv+ er + than + S2	S1+ V+ more/less+ adv+ than + S2
Với trạng từ ngắn, thường là trạng từ chỉ cách thức có hình thức giống tính từ, ta thêm đuôi “ er ” vào sau trạng từ.	- Với trạng từ dài, hầu hết là các trạng từ chỉ cách thức có đuôi “ -ly ” ta thêm “ more ” (nhiều hơn) hoặc “ less ” (ít hơn) vào trước trạng từ. - “ Less ” là từ phản nghĩa của “ more ”, được dùng để diễn đạt sự không bằng nhau ở mức độ ít hơn.
Ví dụ: They work harder than I do. (Họ làm việc chăm chỉ hơn tôi.) She runs faster than he does. (Cô ấy chạy nhanh hơn anh ấy.) My mother gets up earlier than me. (Mẹ tôi thức dậy sớm hơn tôi.) I go to school later than my friends do. (Tôi đi học muộn hơn các bạn.)	Ví dụ: My friend did the test more carefully than I did. (Bạn tôi làm bài kiểm tra cẩn thận hơn tôi.) My father talks more slowly than my mother does. (Bố tôi nói chậm hơn mẹ tôi.) Hanh acts less responsibly than anyone here. (Hạnh hành động thiếu trách nhiệm hơn bất cứ ai ở đây.)

3. So sánh nhất với tính từ (Superlative of adjectives)

Ta sử dụng so sánh nhất để so sánh người (hoặc vật) với tất cả người (hoặc vật) trong nhóm.

Cấu trúc câu so sánh nhất với tính từ

Đối với tính từ ngắn	Đối với tính từ dài
S1 + to be + the +adj + -est + (Danh từ)	S1 + to be + the most +adj + (Danh từ)
Ví dụ: Russia is the biggest country in the world. (Nga là đất nước lớn nhất trên thế giới) My school is the biggest in the city. (Trường của tôi lớn nhất trong thành phố.) My father is the oldest person in my family. (Bố tôi là người lớn tuổi nhất trong nhà.) Quang is the tallest in his class. (Quang là người cao nhất trong lớp của anh ấy.)	Ví dụ: This exercise is the most difficult . (Bài tập này là khó nhất.) This is the most interesting film I've ever seen. (Đây là bộ phim hay nhất tôi từng xem.) Ngoc is the most intelligent student. (Ngọc là học sinh thông minh nhất.)

Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh hơn, ta thêm “by far” vào sau hình thức so sánh hoặc có thể dùng *second, third...*

Ví dụ:

He is the smartest by far.

(Anh ấy thông minh nhất, hơn mọi người nhiều.)

Huong is the second tallest person in my class.

(Hương là người cao thứ 2 trong lớp tôi.)

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ hoặc trạng từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu sau:

- Urban sprawl has happened (fast) _____ than ever before.
- Ha Noi is much (populous) _____ than my hometown.
- The city center is (densely) _____ populated than the suburbs.
- You can count on Peter. He is (reliable) _____ than he appears to be.
- This Singer performs (well) _____ than she used to be three years ago.
- This year we travel (far) _____ than we did last year.
- I noticed that today my daughter looked (happy) _____ than usual.
- As people get old, they try to maintain a (healthy) _____ lifestyle than when they are young.
- Travelling by bus is much (slow) _____ than travelling by bullet train.
- Jim didn't feel well today, so he performed (badly) _____ than usual.
- You are (good) _____ than me when it comes to public speaking.
- He seems to be (familiar) _____ with this neighborhood than anyone else here.
- Listen! Today Jim sings (beautifully) _____ than any other day.
- The air in the city is (polluted) _____ than that in the countryside.
- I think a computer will be (helpful) _____ for you than a smartphone.

Bài 2: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

- Jim boasted that he could run (faster/ fastlier) than anyone else in his class.
- Her presentation is (poorer/more poorly) prepared than I expected.
- Jim seems to care (littler/ less) about his health than he should.
- If you had tried (harder/ more hardly), you would have passed the test.
- Today the sun shines (brighter/ more brightly) than yesterday.
- Snow storm in my hometown is (more severe/ more severely) than anywhere else in the country.
- I think you could reach a (higher/ more highly) position in the company if you tried.
- If you behaved (cleverer/ more cleverly), they would look up to you..

9. Although my computer is old-fashioned, it runs (smoother/ more smoothly) than many of the modern ones.
10. Thanks to immense practice, Jim can speak English much (more fluent/ more fluently) than he used to.

Bài 3: Cho dạng so sánh hơn hoặc so sánh nhất của các tính từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu sau:

1. Josh is the second (intelligent) _____ student in his class.
2. If only the traffic in my hometown was (convenient) _____ than it is now.
3. Hanoi is amongst (polluted) _____ city in the world.
4. I wish that my house was (spacious) _____.
5. By far, this is (stunning) _____ scene I have ever seen.
6. He seems to be (tall) _____ amongst the children at his age.
7. You did a quite good job yesterday but I expected you to be (good) _____.
You got me down a little bit.
8. This must be (inspiring) _____ speech of yours. Everyone in the room clapped their hands in delight.
9. Admittedly, I anticipated a (good) _____ performance of yours. You didn't prepare well for this, did you?
10. This is not (expensive) _____ car in the showroom. There are many other cars at higher cost.

Bài 4: Viết lại câu sau sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi, sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của trạng từ hoặc tính từ.

0. Living in the city is much more expensive than living in the countryside.
 Living in the countryside is much cheaper than living in the city.
1. My current house is more spacious than the old one.
 My old house _____
2. He performed better than he was expected.
 He was expected _____
3. This time Mike runs faster than his brother.
 This time Mike's brother _____
4. I think you will have a higher position in our company than Jim.
 I think Jim will _____
5. Jane decorated her cake more beautifully than I did.
 I _____
6. This year Peter invested a larger amount of money on his business than last year.  Last year _____
7. My computer is costlier than Jim's.

Jim's computer _____ 8.

Playing sports is more time-saving than playing computer games.

Playing computer games _____

Bài 5: Dựa vào những thông tin cho trong bảng dưới đây, hãy viết các câu so sánh với những tính từ thích hợp.

	Ha Noi City	Ho Chi Minh City
Population	7,588 million (2005)	8,426 million
Area	3.329 km ²	2.096 km ²
Pollution Density	2.171 per square kilometre	3.888 per square kilometre
Resident	More traditional	More dynamic
Weather (Winter)	Cold	Warm

- Residents of Ha Noi City are more traditional than residents of Ho Chi Minh City.
- Residents of Ho Chi Minh City are _____ 3.
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____ II

CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS) (TIẾP)

Bên cạnh ý nghĩa, vị trí của động từ và tiểu từ trong cụm động từ cũng là phần kiến thức quan trọng các em cần chú ý tới.

1. Động từ chính và tiểu từ luôn đứng cạnh nhau

Dưới đây là những trường hợp động từ chính và tiểu từ luôn đi sát nhau, không bao giờ tách rời.

Trường hợp	Ví dụ
TH1: Với những cụm nội động từ (intransitive phrasal verb) không có tân ngữ phía sau.	The magazine Time comes out once a week. (Báo Time được phát hành mỗi tuần một lần.) Our car broke down and had to be towed to a garage. (Xe chúng tôi bị hư và phải kéo về chỗ sửa.)
TH2: Với những cụm ngoại động từ được cấu tạo bởi động từ + giới từ (to, for, at, ...), theo sau là tân ngữ.	I ran into our old friend, Mary, the other day at the supermarket. (Hôm đó, tôi gặp lại Mary, bạn cũ của tụi mình, ở siêu thị.) She was looking for the passport which she had lost. (Chị ấy đang tìm kiếm cuốn hộ chiếu mà chị ấy đã mất.)

TH3: Với những cụm từ được cấu tạo bởi động từ+trạng từ + giới từ (**phrasal prepositional verbs**), theo sau là tân ngữ.

She was **looking everywhere for** the missing passport.
(KHÔNG DỪNG...looking for everywhere...)
(Cô ta đang tìm khắp mọi nơi cho ra cuốn hộ chiếu đã mất.)

I can't **put up with** this treatment any longer.
(KHÔNG DỪNG ...put up this treatment/it with...) (KHÔNG DỪNG ... put this treatment/it up with)
(Tôi không thể nào chịu đựng nổi cách đối xử này nữa.)

Một vài cụm phrasal verbs có động từ và tiểu từ luôn đứng cạnh nhau:

Pass away (chết)	Wait for (đợi)	Use up (sử dụng hết, cạn kiệt)
belong to (thuộc về)	Take after (giống ai như đực)	Stay up (đứng muộn)
attend to (chú ý)	break up (chia tay, giải tán)	believe in (tin cần, tin có)
Save up (để dành)	Look after (chăm sóc)	Look for (trông đợi, tìm kiếm)
Shut up (ngậm miệng lại)	Clear up (dọn dẹp)	Set out /off (khởi hành, bắt đầu)
Show off (khoe khoang, khoe lác)	agree on sth (đồng ý với điều gì)	agree with (đồng ý với ai, hợp với, tốt cho)
Take over (giành quyền kiểm soát)	Run into (tình cờ gặp, đâm xô, lâm vào)	Watch out/over (coi chừng, cẩn thận)

2. Động từ chính và tiểu từ có thể được ngăn cách bởi tân ngữ

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Hầu hết cụm ngoại động từ (transitive phrasal verbs) thuộc loại này. Tân ngữ là một danh từ thì có thể nằm ở giữa động từ và tiểu từ hoặc đi sau tiểu từ.	I took my shoes off./ I took off my shoes. (Tôi cởi giày ra.) He admitted he'd made up the whole thing./ He admitted he'd made the whole thing up. (Anh ta thú nhận rằng đã bịa ra mọi chuyện.)
Khi tân ngữ là một đại từ như this, that, it, them, me, her & he'd thì đại từ này bắt buộc sẽ phải đứng ở giữa động từ và tiểu từ.	I took them off. (KHÔNG DỪNG I took off them) He admitted he'd made it up. (KHÔNG DỪNG He admitted he'd made up it)

Một vài cụm **phrasal verbs** có động từ và tiểu từ có thể đứng tách rời:

Pay sb back (trả nợ ai)	Take sth off (cởi cái gì đó)	Put sth on (mặc cái gì đó vào)
Tell sb off (la rầy ai đó)	Pick sb up (đón ai đó)	See sb off (tạm biệt)
Drop sb off (thả ai xuống xe)	Make sth up (bịa chuyện)	Keep sb together (gắn bó)
Pull sth out (lấy cái gì ra)	Put stb away (cất đi)	Put sth down (ghi chép lại)
ask sb in/ out (cho ai vào/ ra)	cut sth into (cắt vật gì thành)	Get sb down (làm ai thất vọng)

Turn sth/sb down (từ chối cái gì/ai đó)

Put something/ somebody out (đưa ai/cái gì ra ngoài)

Take sb/sth back to (đem trả lại)

• Sau mỗi cụm động từ thường có **sb/sth**, trong đó; **sb** viết tắt cho **somebody**(người nào đó), **sth**: viết tắt cho **something**(cái gì đó).

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng. (A, B, C)

- Who does Jim take _____?
A. after B. up C. in
- I am waiting _____ the result of the test.
A. after B. for C. on
- They haven't agreed _____ what make of car they would buy.
A. on B. in C. with
- "Who did you run _____ yesterday?" "It was my old teacher."
A. on B. out of C. into
- If we don't conserve the natural gas, it will soon be used _____?
A. up B. off C. to
- Are you still looking _____ a job or have you already got one?
A. after B. up C. for
- After years of being badly treated, James doesn't believe _____ the good things in life any more.
A. on B. in C. about
- Why did you stay _____ so late last night?
A. in B. up C. on
- When Mr. Brown went on a business trip, Mrs. Smith took _____ his work.
A. over B. up C. off
- Jim promised to pick me _____ from the airport.
A. over B. up C. on
- Peter took _____ his rain coat before he came in.
A. over B. up C. off
- You mustn't believe him. He made _____ the whole story which was completely wrong.
A. over B. up C. on
- Many of my friends came to the airport to see me _____.
A. over B. up C. off
- The teacher told us to put _____ interesting details of the presentation.
A. up B. down C. away
- It is the shared mind that keeps us _____.

A. up B. together C. with

Bài 7: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

1. My mother told me to (put/ get) on warm clothes before I went out
2. Jim really (got/ put) me down when he forgot my birthday.
3. My father never (tells/ drops) me off but my mother is always shouting at me.
4. I couldn't believe she (turned/ got) down my invitation for the second time.
5. My mother often lets me (look/ take) after my younger brother.
6. "Why did she (break/ stay) up with you?" "She said I didn't care much about her".
7. Please (drop/ tell) me off in front of the theater.
8. We've been (saving/ looking) up to travel to New York this summer.
9. Have you (take/ put) out clean towels for the guests?
10. (Take/ Dress) off your rain coat before you come in.
11. I remember (paying/ looking) Jim back but he kept asking me for his money.
12. Jim's poor test results (got/ looked) his parents down.
13. My grandmother (died/ passed) away before I was born.
14. I have many tasks to (attend/ took) to.
15. Who does this bag (belong/ own) to?

Bài 8: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây bằng cách điền tiểu từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

1. We will set _____ for Tokyo in the next few hours.
2. Everyone says that Jim takes _____ his father but I think he is more like his mother.
3. Who will take _____ your position when you are on parental leave?
4. There are four of us so Peter cuts the cake _____ four pieces.
5. I am going to buy a new bike, so I put my old one _____.
6. Remember to put the trash _____ before the garbage truck comes.
7. You must take _____ your hat before you come into a temple.
8. I hate the way my manager shuts me _____ when she disagrees with me.
9. What are you looking _____ ? My car keys.
10. Watch _____ for the dog. Everyone says that it is a fierce dog.

Bài 9: Đánh dấu [✓] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu [X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

_____ 1. Your son doesn't take you after at all.

_____ 2. I think we will use the natural resources up in the near future.

_____ 3. Jim agreed me with when I said he needed to improve his living condition.

_____ 4. Mary and Peter broke them up after two months dating.

- _____ 5. I rarely put down what the teacher says but I can remember most of her words.

- _____ 6. The taxi driver dropped me off in front of the City Council building.

- _____ 7. You should clear your room up before mom comes back.

- _____ 8. I was happy that I run my old teacher into yesterday.

- _____ 9. Mary is always showing her jewelry off.

- _____ 10. Both of us agreed with Jane's opinion about our plan.

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho trước, viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Yesterday/ the plane/ take/ off/ early/ than/ I/ expect.

- _____ 2. My
mother/ look/ after/ us/carefully/ than/ my/father.

- _____ 3.
They/ cut/the/big/cake/into/small/ parts/than/I/think.

4. My sister/ even/ tell/ me/ off/ often/ than/ my/ mother/ do.

- _____ 5.
Who/ see/ you/ off/ yesterday?

6. It/ cold/ today/ so/ I/ put/ on/ warm/ clothes/ than/ usual.

7. Yesterday/ my father/ pick/ me/ up/ late/ than/ usual.

8. You/ be/ pretty/ girl/ I/ ever/ know.

9. Unless/you/listen/ attentively/ to/ you/ teacher/ you/ not/catch/ up/with/your friends.

10. By far, "The Little Prince"/ be/ my/ favorite/ book.

Bài 11: Hoàn thành các câu sau, sử dụng dạng so sánh của các trạng từ hoặc tính từ cho sẵn.

ancient	polluted	spacious	fast
populous	densely	tranquil	well

- I prefer living in the countryside to living in big cities as the countryside is _____. I really enjoy peaceful moments of life.
- Although the cities are _____ than the countryside, there are more recreational activities that I really enjoy in the cities.
- I can't believe this vase is more than 100 years old. It is much _____ than I thought.
- The city is always _____ populated than the countryside.
- My town is much _____ than it was ten years ago. I remember there used to be only several houses in a large area.
- Houses in the rural areas are _____ than those in urban areas.
- Young people often _____ adjust to changes than the old.
- The number of skyscrapers in the city is growing _____ than ever before.

Scanned by CamScanner

Bài 12: Hoàn thành những câu sau bằng một cụm động từ thích hợp.

pay back	get down	believe in	watch out	tell off
pull out	see off	agree with	save up	make up

- I have seen a lot of people burst into tears when they _____ their friends and family _____.
- Do you _____ me that you didn't try hard enough?
- Has your teacher ever _____ you _____? No, she hasn't. She is a nice teacher.
- Last week I borrowed Tom \$50 to buy a book but I _____ him _____ yet.
- My boyfriend walked towards me and then he _____ a small gift.
- I never _____ in ghosts but my brother is always scared of them.
- _____! There is a car coming.
- I hate the way Peter tells lies and _____ stories to cheat people.
- Have you _____ enough to buy a new car?
- I promised my mother not to _____ her _____, so I tried my best to get high scores.

Bài 13: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

Should people retire to the countryside?

Many people who are close to their retirement want to move to the countryside to enjoy the rest of their life. It is widely believed that life in the rural areas are (1) _____ than that in the

city. The countryside is (2) _____ than the city and people's health will improve. (3) _____, city folks have warned people about the potential risks of living the rural areas. Life in the countryside may not be blissfully calm as expected, even tougher. For example, rural houses are (4) _____ and more inconvenient than those in the city. During harsh weather condition, it is dangerous for people living in it. (5) _____, people may also (6) _____ up to the lack of health care service. The vulnerable old people can't be (7) _____ treated in the countryside than in the city. For those who have spent most of their life working and living in urban areas, they may not be able to (8) _____ the boredom and lack of facility in the rural areas.

1. A. more peaceful B. more peacefully B. more noisy C. more noisily
2. A. less polluted B. more polluted C. less pollute C. more pollute
3. A. However B. But C. Therefore D. When
4. A. much weaker B. more weaker C. less weaker D. more weakly
5. A. However B. Besides C. Whereas D. Therefore
6. A. look B. make C. face D. take
7. A. well B. more better C. best D. better
8. A. come down with B. put up with C. work out D. agree on

Bài 14: Đọc bài đọc sau đây. Điền T (True) trước câu có thông tin đúng với thông tin bài đọc. Điền F (False) trước câu có thông tin không đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền NG (Not Given) trước câu có nội dung không có trong bài đọc.

Issues in big cities

These days, more and more people prefer urban life because of all the opportunities it brings about, namely job opportunity, recreational facilities, decent education and high standard of living. However, once they settle down in a city, they have to face up to more than one problem.

To begin with, the life in the urban city is also very stressful and busy. City dwellers often have a hectic pace of life, which means that they rarely have enough time for recreational activities. People have to work hard and compete fiercely to earn a decent living, which puts people under a lot of pressure. Moreover, working hard and extra working hours mean that urban residents have very short time for their family and friends. Many people have complained that parents in the cities do not pay much attention to their children and people tend to talk less to each other.

Furthermore, people have to put up with heavy pollution in the city. There are many kinds of pollution such as air, water, land, noise and even light pollution. This is understandable because there are numerous pollutants in the city. For example, exhaust fumes from vehicles or emissions from factories are the main causes of air pollution. Pollution is detrimental to human health. It can create some incurable diseases for people such as lung cancer when we inhale too much fume and dust.

Another serious problem is unemployment, while many people move to the city with hope of find a job, their dreams turn sour due to the competitive job market. In the city the demand for the quality of workforce is getting higher and higher. Poorly-trained workers from rural areas may become jobless in the city.

In conclusion, should people want to move from the countryside to the urban areas, they have to consider all the advantages and disadvantages before making up their mind. _____ 1. There are more opportunities than problems for people living in the urban areas.

_____ 2. Although people in the city are busy, they can always have time for entertainment activities.

_____ 3. People have to work hard and compete fiercely to make money.

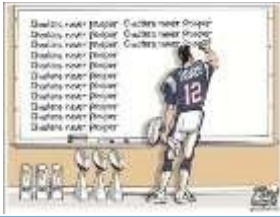
_____ 4. People don't have to tolerate heavy pollution in the city.

_____ 5. Air pollution is the most serious issue in the city.

_____ 6. The competitive job market in the city causes difficulties for workers with low quality to find a job.

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
adolescence /ˌædəˈlesns/ (n)	vị thành niên		There are major changes in a person's body during adolescence. Có những sự thay đổi lớn của cơ thể người trong giai đoạn vị thành niên.
assure /əˈʃʊə(r)/ (v)	chắc chắn		James assured that he didn't cheat. James chắc chắn rằng cậu ta không gian lận.
cognitive /ˈkɒɡnətɪv/ (adj)	tư kĩ năng duy		A child's cognitive development is affected by many factors. Sự phát triển kỹ năng tư duy của một đứa trẻ bị ảnh hưởng bởi nhiều yếu tố.
concentrate /ˈkɒnsntreɪt/ (v)	tập trung		I can't concentrate with all the noise going on. Tôi không thể tập trung với những tiếng ồn liên tục như vậy.
conflict /ˈkɒnflɪkt/ (n)	xung đột		I am often in conflicts with my parents. Tôi thường có xích mích với bố mẹ tôi.
cooperate /kəʊˈɒpəreɪt/ (v)	hợp tác		We cooperated closely to carry out the project. Chúng tôi hợp tác với nhau chặt chẽ để thực hiện dự án.

delighted /di'laɪtɪd/ (adj)	vui vẻ		I was delighted that you could stay. Tôi rất vui vì bạn có thể ở lại.
depressed /di'prest/ (adj)	chán nản, thất vọng		Mary was depressed about her test score. Mary rất chán nản vì điểm kiểm tra của cô ấy.
emotion /i'məʊʃn/ (n)	cảm xúc		She couldn't hide her emotions. Cô ấy không thể che giấu cảm xúc của mình.
empathize with /'empəθaɪz wɪð/ (v)	đồng cảm với		Children are taught to empathize with other people. Trẻ em được dạy là phải cảm thông với người khác.
frustrated /frʌ'streɪtɪd/ (adj)	khó chịu, mất kiên nhẫn		Jim is frustrated with his current job. Jim rất khó chịu với công việc hiện tại của anh ấy.
resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ (v)	giải quyết		It is not easy to resolve the conflict between parents and kids. Không dễ dàng để giải quyết mâu thuẫn giữa bố mẹ và con cái.
self-aware /,self ə'weə(r)/ (adj)	tự nhận thức		Ann is self-aware of her shortcomings. Ann tự nhận thức được những thiếu sót của cô ấy.
self-discipline /,self 'dɪsəplɪn/ (n)	tự kỉ luật		Self-discipline is very important. Tính tự kỉ luật là rất quan trọng.

abuse /ə'bjʊ:s/ (n, v)	lạm dụng		Did the manager abuse his power? Người quản lý có lạm quyền không?
tense /tens/ (adj)	căng thẳng, hay lo lắng		She is a very tense person. Cô ấy là người rất hay lo lắng.
trafficking /'træfɪkɪŋ/ (n)	buôn lậu		Drug trafficking is illegal in many countries. Buôn lậu thuốc là phạm pháp ở nhiều quốc gia.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP CÂU GIÁN TIẾP (REPORTED SPEECH)

1. Định nghĩa

Định nghĩa	Ví dụ
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Câu trực tiếp (Direct speech) là chính xác lời nói của ai đó. Chúng ta thường dùng dấu (" / ") để trích dẫn lời nói trực tiếp. Câu tường thuật (hay còn gọi là Câu gián tiếp) là câu thuật lại lời nói trực tiếp do một người khác phát biểu. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> They said, "We will visit her." (Direct Speech) → They said (that) they would visit her. (Reported Speech/ Indirect Speech)

2. Câu trần thuật gián tiếp (Reported Statement)

Khi muốn thay đổi 1 câu trần thuật trực tiếp sang 1 câu trần thuật gián tiếp, chúng ta dùng động từ 'say/tell' để giới thiệu. Đồng thời cần áp dụng các quy tắc sau: **a. Thay đổi thì của động từ**

- ❖ Nếu động từ ở thì hiện tại đơn (say/ tell) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp giữ nguyên thì trong câu trực tiếp.

Ví dụ: "I always drink coffee in the morning", she says.

→ She says that she always drinks coffee in the morning.

- ❖ Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì quá khứ (**said/ told**) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp cần thay đổi như sau:

Thì trong lời nói trực tiếp	Thì trong lời nói gián tiếp
Hiện tại đơn "I like sciences."	→ Quá khứ đơn He said (that) he liked sciences.
Hiện tại tiếp diễn "I am staying for a few days."	→ Quá khứ tiếp diễn She said (that) she was staying for a few days.

Hiện tại hoàn thành "Nick has left."	→ Quá khứ hoàn thành She told me (that) Nick had left.
Quá khứ đơn "Nick left this morning."	→ Quá khứ hoàn thành She told me (that) Nick had left that morning.
Quá khứ tiếp diễn "I was doing my homework."	→ Quá khứ tiếp diễn/ Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn She said (that) she was doing her homework/ she had been doing her homework
Will "Man will travel to Mars."	→ Would He said (that) man would travel to Mars.
Can "We can swim."	→ Would They told us (that) they could swim.
May "We may live on the moon."	→ Would He said (that) We might live on the moon.

b. Đổi ngôi của đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ và đại từ sở hữu.

Trong lời nói trực tiếp	Trong lời nói gián tiếp
i	→ he/ she
we	→ they
you	→ i/ he/ she
my	→ his/ her
our	→ their
your	→ my/ his/ her
mine	→ his/ hers
ours	→ theirs

c. Thay đổi các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn

Trạng từ trong câu trực tiếp	Trạng từ trong câu gián tiếp
now	→ then
today	→ that day
here	→ there
this week	→ that week
tomorrow	→ the following day/ the next day
yesterday	→ the day before/ the previous day
last month	→ the month before/ the previous month
tonight	→ that night
ago	→ before
next week	→ the following week/ the week after

these

→ those

Ví dụ:

He said to me, "I and you will go with her father next week."

He told me (that) he and I would go with her father the following week.

3. Câu hỏi gián tiếp (Reported questions)**a. Các quy tắc khi chuyển câu hỏi trực tiếp sang câu hỏi gián tiếp**

- Động từ tường thuật được sử dụng trong Câu hỏi Gián tiếp thường là: **asked, required, wondered, wanted to know.**

- Áp dụng qui tắc đổi Đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ sở hữu, đại từ sở hữu giống câu Trần thuật Gián tiếp.

- Áp dụng qui tắc đổi Thì của động từ giống câu Trần thuật Gián tiếp.

- Áp dụng qui tắc đổi các Trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn giống câu Trần thuật Gián tiếp.

- Câu hỏi chuyển sang câu gián tiếp phải được chuyển về dạng KHẲNG ĐỊNH và lược bỏ dấu hỏi chấm.

b. Các dạng câu hỏi gián tiếp

Dạng	Cấu trúc
Câu hỏi Wh-Questions (câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi như: What, where, when, why, how...)	S + asked/wondered/wanted to know + O + Wh- + S + V.... Ví dụ: He said to me, "Why did you go with her father last week?" → He asked me why I had gone with her father the week before.
Câu hỏi Yes/No Questions: Dùng "if hoặc whether" để bắt đầu câu hỏi Yes/No gián tiếp.	S + asked/wondered/wanted to know + O + if/whether + S + V.... Ví dụ: He said to me, "Will you go with her father next week?" → He asked me if/whether I would go with her father the following week.

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN**Bài 1: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:**

1. My father always says that he (is/ was) very proud of me.
2. Mary told me she (will/would) visit me this summer.
3. Jim wonders whether Jane (liked/ likes) him or not.
4. My teacher (says/ said) that we had to finish our assignment on time.
5. They told me that they (are/ were) going to move their house the following month.
6. My sister said she (can/ could) win the competition if she tried her best.
7. I told Jim that he (is/ was) the most intelligent person I knew.
8. The mechanic said that it (cost/ costs) up to \$50 to fix my car.

9. They (say/ said) that they would help me if they had free time.
10. Jim said that he (has just got/ had just got) a new bike.

Bài 2: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

1. Jim said to me: "They will build a new bridge across this river this year."
A. Jim said to me that they will build a new bridge across this river this year.
B. Jim said to me that they would build a new bridge across this river this year.
C. Jim said to me that they would build a new bridge across that river that year.
2. My mother often tells me: "You need to take care of yourself."
A. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of yourself.
B. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of herself.
C. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of myself.
3. Peter informed me: "They canceled the meeting yesterday."
A. Peter informed me that they canceled the meeting yesterday.
B. Peter informed me that they had canceled the meeting yesterday.
C. Peter informed me that they had canceled the meeting the day before.
4. Peter and Jane said to me: "Our wedding will be held next week."
A. Peter and Jane said to me that my wedding would be held next week.
B. Peter and Jane said to me that their wedding would be held the next week.
C. Peter and Jane said to me that their wedding would be held the following week.
5. I told him: "I am busy this week so I can't come to your party."
A. I told him that I was busy this week so I can't come to my party.
B. I told him that I was busy that week so I couldn't come to my party.
C. I told him that I was busy that week so I couldn't come to his party.
6. The doctor said: "You will suffer from diabetes if you don't reduce sugar in your daily meals."
A. The doctor said I would suffer from diabetes if I didn't reduce sugar in my daily meals.
B. The doctor said I would suffer from diabetes if I don't reduce sugar in my daily meals.
C. The doctor said I suffered from diabetes if I didn't reduce sugar in my daily meals.
7. Peter asked me: "Would you go to the prom with me?" A. Peter asked me if I would go to the prom with me.
B. Peter asked me whether I would go to the prom with him.
C. Peter asked me whether would I go to the prom with him.
8. My father asked me: "Where are you going?" A. My father asked me where was I going.
B. My father asked me where you were going,
C. My father asked me where I was going,

9. Oliver asked me: "What will you do if you have a day off?" A. Oliver asked me what I would do if I have a day off.
B. Oliver asked me what I would do if I had a day off.
C. Oliver asked me what would I do if I have a day off.
10. My brother asked me: "How can I open this box?" A. My brother asked me how I could open that box.
B. My brother asked me how to open that box.
C. My brother asked me how he could open this box.

Bài 3: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. My mother asked me if I could help her do gardening tomorrow. _____
2. Jim wondered if to buy a new radio or fix his old one. _____
3. Peter asked me was I free that weekend. _____
4. I wanted to know who was the winner of that competition. _____
5. They said that Peter can't make it to the final show. _____
6. My manager asked if I have finished my work yet. _____
7. Peter said that he was going to get married following month. _____
8. She asked me what had I done the previous day. _____
9. Now I just don't know whether to leave or stayed. _____
10. Mr. Brown said that he would get promotion by the end of this year. _____

Bài 4: Chuyển những câu trực tiếp dưới đây thành câu gián tiếp.

1. Many doctor say: "Teenagers undergo many physical and mental changes during their puberty".

2. Sometimes my mother tells me: "You don't have to be so tense".

3. Peter said: "I am looking forward to my grandfather's gift".

4. "If I pass this test, my father will buy me a new skateboard" Peter said.

5. I told my teacher: "I forgot to do my homework".

6.

"Mr. Brown owns two cars and three houses." Jim said.

7. She said to me: "I can't do it by myself".

8. My mother said: "I will go on a business trip next week".

9.

My manager said: "Someone broke into our office yesterday".

10.

He told me: "You may have trouble if you don't do your homework".

11. The singer said: "I started my career three years ago".

12. Jim told me: "It is not my book, it's yours."

13. "I have just received a postcard from my foreign friend." Ann said to me.

14. "This story happened long ago." He said.

15. Peter said: "I hope it will be sunny tomorrow."

Bài 5: Chuyển những câu hỏi trực tiếp dưới đây thành câu gián tiếp.

1. Jim asked his girlfriend/How many pairs of shoes do you have?"

2.

"Are you going to London next week?" Peter asked Jane.

3.

"Have you done the laundry?" Mom asked my sister.

4.

“Does your brother live in London, Peter?” Jane asked.

5.

“What are you doing now?” Jim asked his sister.

6.

“Did you enjoy the party last night?” My classmate asked me.

7. My friends always ask me: ‘What genre of music do you like the most?’

8.

“What have you done to cope with your work stress?” My doctor asked me.

9.

“What do you often do if you are sad?” Jim asked me.

10. Jim asked me: “Who did you run into yesterday?”

II TỪ ĐỂ HỎI ĐỨNG TRƯỚC ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ “TO” (QUESTION WORDS BEFORE TO- INFINITIVE)

(QUESTION

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
<p>Ta dùng cấu trúc câu các từ để hỏi what, when, where, who, how + to V (động từ nguyên mẫu có to) trong lời nói gián tiếp để:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -diễn tả những tình huống khó khăn hoặc không chắc chắn. -tường thuật lại câu hỏi về một việc gì đó nên được làm. 	<p>We don't know who to contact. (Chúng tôi không biết liên hệ với ai.)</p> <p>She can't decide what to do. (Cô ấy không thể quyết định nên làm gì.) Tell me when to pay. (Hãy cho tôi biết phải thanh toán vào lúc nào.) He shows me where to get tickets. (Anh ấy chỉ cho tôi nơi mua vé.)</p>

Ta không thể sử dụng “why” trước “toV”.	No one could explain why we had to come there.
	(Không ai có thể giải thích lý do chúng ta phải đến đó.) No one could explain why to come there.→SAI
Trước các từ để hỏi, ta có thể sử dụng các động từ như ask, (not) decide, discover, discuss, explain, find out, forget, (not) know, learn, remember, say, think, understand, wonder, (not) be sure, have no idea, (not) tell...	We were wondering where to cook the dinner. (Chúng tôi đang phân vân liệu nấu bữa tối chỗ nào.) Mike wants to know how to work the computer. (Mike muốn biết cách làm việc với máy tính.) Have Mike and Lisa decided when to have their dinner? (Mike và Lisa đã quyết định khi nào ăn tối chưa?) I wasn't sure what to do. (Tôi không biết phải làm gì.)
Để tường thuật lại dạng câu hỏi Yes/No questions, ta dùng cấu trúc whether + to V . LƯU ý, “if” không được sử dụng trong trường hợp này.	We'll have to decide whether to go ahead with the timetable (or not). (Chúng ta sẽ phải quyết định liệu nên tiếp tục lịch trình này (hay là không).) We'll have to decide if to go ahead.→ SAI Mike wasn't sure whether to phone her immediately or not. (Mike không chắc liệu có nên gọi cho cô ấy ngay hay không.) I was wondering whether to order some coffee. (Tôi đã phân vân liệu có nên gọi cà phê không.) I didn't know whether to laugh or cry. (Tôi không biết liệu nên cười hay khóc)

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 6: Chuyển những câu trực tiếp sau đây thành câu gián tiếp.

1. “You don’t have to do this if you don’t really want to”. They said to me.

_____ 2. “I saw Jim when I was walking home yesterday.” He told me.

_____ 3. “Will you forgive Jim if he apologizes to you?” Jane asked me.

_____ 4. “Peter has been a friends of mine for 3 years” I told Jane.

_____ 5. “Will I be capable of winning this contest?” Jim wondered.

6. "There was a serious car accident right here last week" Josh said.

7. "I am frustrated that Jim forgot our date yesterday". Jane told me.

8. "This is the first time I've been to NYC". Peter said.

9. Mr. Brown told his wife: "Our children have grown up, so you don't have to care much about them."

10. "What will you do if you win a lottery?" Peter asked me.

Bài 7: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Jim/ always/ want/ know/ whether/ he/ should/ study/ abroad/ or/ not.

2.

When/ I/ be/ small/ I/ tell/ my mother/I/want be/ superman.

3.

Jim/ be/ confused/ because/ he/ not/ sure/ what/ do/ now.

4. I/

have/ no/ idea/ what/ they/ do/ at the moment.

5.

Please/ show/ me/ how/ get/ nearest/ post office.

6.

Now/ we/ have to/ decide/ where/ go/ and/ what/ do/ tomorrow.

7.

You/make/ up/your/mind/where/spend/your/summer/yet?

8. I/cannot/ understand/ why/ Jim/ fail/ the/ final test.

9. My mother/just/find/ out/where/ I/ hide/ my/exam paper.

10. Yesterday, my teacher/carefully/ explain/ how/young/ birds/ learn/ to/ fly.

Bài 8: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

Anxiety during puberty

Many psychologists believe that boys and girls are (1) _____ to anxiety when they experience puberty for a number of reasons. Puberty often starts at the middle of (2) _____ (from 15 to 17 years old) when people experience rapid changes in their body as well as their brain. Such changes may cause a lot of anxiety if adolescents are not (3) _____ of what they are undergoing. For girls, acne is always a big crisis and for boys, changes in their voice sometimes bother them. Those teenagers may lose their confidence because they are ashamed of the changes of appearance. Besides, the surge in hormones also (4) _____ to high level of anxiety of teenagers. During (5) _____, mood swing happens very often and teenagers easily get (6) _____ at tiny problems. It is necessary that parents fully understand their children to help them deal (7) _____ anxiety.

1. A. near B. prone C. about D. close
2. A. adolescence B. adolescent C. adulthood D. adult
3. A. well-aware B. well-understand C. self-discipline D. well-behaved
4. A. comes B. contributes C. distributes D. attributes
5. A. adulthood B. childhood C. puberty D. teenage
6. A. interested B. keen C. frustrated D. excited
7. A. on B. in C. with D. about

Bài 9: Đọc đoạn văn sau, điền T (True) trước câu trả lời có nội dung đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền F (False) trước câu có nội dung không đúng với nội dung bài đọc.

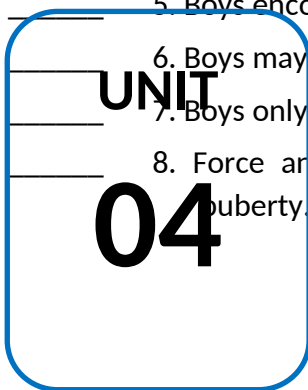
George is in his mid-adolescence and like many of his peers, he is undergoing great changes in his body as well as his brain. He and his friends are experiencing puberty, an important phase of development of a person when physical and mental changes take place. Boys in particular may find numerous changes within themselves which they sometimes cannot understand properly without the guide of parents and other experienced adults. When boys enter their puberty, they often start taking interest in abstract concepts and subjects such as justice, politics and arts. They also begin to understand the world around them, planning out a life for themselves, having dreams and life goals to fulfill.

Along with a very new view of life and sense of self comes anxiety and confusion. Boys in their puberty develop a strong sense of personal identity. Therefore, they often try to get attention

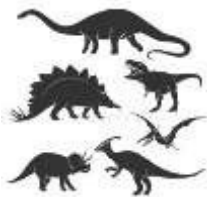
from other to prove themselves. They are also curious about the adult world. Sometimes, they can be misled by the negative things from the world around them. For example, boys start to smoke or drink because they are curious and they think they are cool to do so. They make a lot of friends and form peer groups. They may have good friends and they may not be mature enough to identify bad ones. In short, this is a period of experiencing new things and new people, both the good and the bad.

It is crucial that parents are ready for the changes of their boys so that they can help their boys go through this period. A cozy home environment where adolescents can stay comfortable and share their feelings and experience is important. Parents should be sensitive to provide reasonable guidelines. Force and punishments are not highly recommended in this phase as adolescents tend to be rebellious.

- _____ 1. There are only changes in a boy's body during his puberty.
- _____ 2. Boys can always understand their changes properly without the guide of parents and other experienced adults.
- _____ 3. When boys enter their puberty, they often lose interest in abstract concepts and subjects.
- _____ 4. Boys often plan their life before they enter puberty.
- _____ 5. Boys encounter anxiety and confusion during puberty.
- _____ 6. Boys may start to smoke or drink because of their curiosity.
- _____ 7. Boys only have bad experiences during adolescence.
- _____ 8. Force and punishment are highly advisable when dealing with boys in their puberty.



VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
breadwinner /'bredwɪnə(r)/ (n)	trụ cột về kinh tế		My father is the breadwinner of our family. <i>Ba tôi là trụ cột kinh tế của gia đình của tôi.</i>
die out /daɪ aʊt/	biến mất		This animal species died out due to overhunting. <i>Loài động vật này đã biến mất do săn bắn quá nhiều.</i>

domed /dəʊmd/ (adj)	hình vòm		This temple has a domed ceiling. Ngôi đền này có mái vòm.
downtown /'daʊntaʊn/ (n)	trung tâm thành phố		I want to move to the downtown area. Tôi muốn chuyển tới vùng trung tâm thành phố.
dye /daɪ/ (v)	nhuộm		Mary dyed her hair blonde. Mary đã nhuộm tóc vàng.
face-to-face /feɪs tə feɪs/ (adj)	mặt đối mặt, trực diện		We rarely have a face-to-face conversation. Chúng tôi hiếm khi có một cuộc trò chuyện trực diện.
illiterate /ɪ'litərət/ (adj)	không biết chữ		There are very few illiterate people in my village. Có rất ít người không biết chữ ở làng tôi.
pull out /pʊl aʊt/	rời đi		The train pulls out at 5am tomorrow. Chuyến tàu sẽ rời đi lúc 5 giờ sáng mai.
remote /rɪ'məʊt/ (adj)	xa xôi hẻo lánh		Have you ever been to a remote area in Vietnam? Bạn đã bao giờ đi đến một vùng hẻo lánh ở Việt Nam chưa?
seniority /'si:ni'brəti/ (n)	cấp cao, có thâm niên trong nghề		Jane has seniority over her coworkers. Jane có thâm niên trong nghề hơn những đồng nghiệp của cô.

vendor /'vendə(r)/ (n)	người bán rong		There used to be many vendors in the streets in Vietnam. Đã từng có rất nhiều người bán hàng rong trên đường ở Việt Nam.
-------------------------------------	----------------	---	---

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP THÓI QUEN TRONG QUÁ KHỨ VỚI “USED TO”

Cách dùng	“Used to” được dùng để miêu tả những thói quen, hành động hoặc trạng thái đã xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ và đã kết thúc, không còn ở hiện tại.
Cấu trúc	(+) S + used to + V... (-) S + didn't use to + V... (?) Did + S + use to + V...?
Ví dụ	- I used to listen to the radio. (Ngày trước tôi thường nghe đài.) - They used to go swimming together. (Ngày trước họ thường đi bơi cùng nhau.) - He didn't use to play marbles. (Ngày trước anh ấy không chơi bi.) - Did you use to ride a buffalo? (Ngày trước bạn có đi cưỡi trâu không?)

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc “used to” và động từ trong ngoặc.

- Do you know what (Jim/ do) _____ before he retired?
- _____ (Mary/be) a successful businesswoman before she went bankrupt?
- My family (not/travel) _____ during summer vacation but now we really enjoy it.
- I wonder what (people/ do) _____ to celebrate the Harvest Festival in the past?
- As a kid, Josh (have) _____ his grandfather pick him up from primary school.
- This boy band (be) _____ popular before they disbanded.
- When my grandmother was young, she (set off) _____ for a foreign country almost every summer.
- My mother says that she (not cope) _____ with much work stress five years ago.
- In the past, people in my village (raise) _____ poultry or cattle to earn a living.
- I can't believe my father (be) _____ considered a bad boy before he married my mother.
- Who _____ (you/ confide) in when you were at your teenage?
- They (not use) _____ fork and knife when they first moved to America.
- Jim (not like) _____ me much when we were at school but now he is my husband.
- My father (work) _____ very far from home before he found his current job.
- Those men (suffer) _____ a lot before they finally succeeded in their business.

Bài 2: Dựa vào những thông tin cho sẵn để viết các câu miêu tả những sự việc trong quá khứ mà bây giờ không còn làm nữa.

0. I saw many buffaloes in my hometown but I can't see many of them now.
 I used to see many buffaloes in my hometown.
1. This was only a small company with several years of low profit but now it has changed a lot.
 _____
 2. Men were the breadwinner of the family and women depended greatly on men. 
3. My sister admitted that she lied sometimes in the past but now she didn't. 

4. Jim asked me what I preferred to do as a child that I no longer did now.
 _____
 5. Who took care of you when you were a toddler?
 _____
6. Jim wasn't interested in reading books when he was small but now he's really into it. 

7. I got all the attention from my parents before my little brother was born.
 _____
 _____ 8. Bungalows were very popular 6 years ago.

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc "used to" và các động từ cho sẵn.

look	eat	own	earn
work	be	play	live

1. My whole family _____ on my father's salary but now both of my parents work to support our family.
2. My brother _____ after me when my parents were at work.
3. In the past, women _____ expected to stay home, do household chores and farming instead of getting higher education.
4. Those farmers _____ hard but _____ little money before they were instructed to apply technologies in their farming.
5. We (not) _____ out when but now we often do because we are sometimes too busy to prepare a meal.
6. Women (not) _____ an important role in the political field in the past 50 years.
7. My uncle _____ a sheep farm before he sold it to move to the city.

II CÂU ĐIỀU ƯỚC CHO HIỆN TẠI (WISHES FOR THE PRESENT)

	Trường hợp 1	Trường hợp 2
--	--------------	--------------

Cách dùng	Diễn tả một sự không hài lòng, không thỏa mãn với một hoàn cảnh ở hiện tại và ao ước hoàn cảnh đó xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai.	Diễn tả điều ước cho một sự việc ta mong muốn nó xảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói.
Cấu trúc	I wish + S + V-ed (Quá khứ đơn) Hoặc I wish + could + V	I wish + S + was/were + V-ing (Quá khứ tiếp diễn)
Ví dụ	<p>- I wish I knew more about European history. (= but I don't know much about European history.)</p> <p>- I wish I could drive really fast. (= but I can't drive fast.)</p> <p>(Dùng "wish + could + V" để nói về việc người nói ao ước có khả năng làm gì nhưng thực tế họ không có khả năng thực hiện)</p>	-My son wishes he were studying Marketing instead of Hospitality.
Chú ý	Có thể sử dụng were đối với tất cả các ngôi trong mệnh đề wish.	

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 4: Chia động từ trong ngoặc sao cho thích hợp.

1. Jane wishes she (can/ go) _____ travelling at least once a year.
2. Jim wishes he (earn) _____ more money so that he would live more comfortable.
3. My mother wishes she (not have) _____ to work for extra hours.
4. The little boy wishes it (not rain) _____ at the moment.
5. I wish I (be) _____ healthier so that I could play some extreme sports.
6. Tim is sad because he has lost his bike. He wishes his mother (buy) _____ him a new one.
7. I wish someone (offer) _____ me an opportunity to study abroad.
8. Jim is bored as he is doing his homework now. He wish he (do) _____ his homework.
9. My father is an officer but he wishes he (be) _____ a famous singer.
10. My mother never lets me go to school on my own. I wish she (let) _____ me go alone.

Bài 5: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Old/ man/ wish/ his/ grandchild/ visit/ him/ more/ often.

_____ 2.
I/wish/ you/ can/ spend/ more/ time/ on/ study.

_____ 3.
They/ wish/their/ team/ be/ champion.

_____ 4. I/ wish/ I/ have/ more/ friends/ and/ I/ not/ be/ lonely.

_____ 5.
Mary/wish/ her parents/ not/ have/go/ on/ business/trips/ so/ often.

_____ 6.
Many/ people/ wish/ they/ be/ wealthy/ but/ I/ do/ not.

_____ 7.
I/ wish/ my/ mother/ be/ less/ busy/ so that/ she/ have/ more/ time/ for/ me.

_____ 8.
Jim/ wish/his/parents/not/expect/too/much/from/him.

Bài 6: Dựa vào câu cho trước, viết câu thể hiện điều ước với "wish".

0. I don't have a computer now.

 I wish I had a computer now.

1. Jim's friend lives very far from him.

 Jim wishes _____. 2. My friend cannot afford her favorite camera.

 My _____ friend _____ wishes

_____. 3. The teacher makes us do a lot of homework.

 We _____.

4. I can't sing as beautifully as my sister.

 I _____.

5. My father is depressed that his favorite football team loses the ticket to the final.

 My father _____. 6. I don't have my own house at the present.

 I _____.

7. Mr. Brown is sad that there is no way he can get promotion this year.

 Mr. Brown _____. 8.

Peter is annoyed because there is too much noise from his neighbor.

 Peter _____.

Bài 7: Đánh dấu [✓] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu [X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

- _____ 1. Peter and Jane wishes they could see each other more often.

- _____ 2. I wish Jim were able to deal with all the problems on his own.

- _____ 3. Mrs. Brown wishes her husband was home more often and talks to her more.

- _____ 4. They wish their work was less stressful and they have more time to relax.

- _____ 5. James wishes he had more money so that he could buy what he wants.

- _____ 6. I wish I wasn't having to travel a long distance to work every day.

- _____ 7. They wish they will be able to visit her foreign friend.

- _____ 8. I only wish they provided a larger playground for the kids.

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 8: Sắp xếp những từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. you/ make/ Did/ any/ mistakes/ use/ terrible/ to?

- _____ 2.
she/ run/ Mary/ could/ a/ into/ figure/ wishes/ famous.

3. I/ that/ used/ she/ believe/ doesn't/ to/ a/ be/ lawyer.

4. I/ would/ never/ wish/ wealthy/ a/ person/ I/ be.

5. wish/ a/ My/ list/ sister/ and/ it/ to/ send/ Santa Claus/ used/ make/ to.

you/ what/ Do/ Jim/ company/ to/ for/ used/ work/ know?

7. English/ my/ that/ teacher/ simple/ wish/ used/ language/ us/ understand/ to/ for/ I.

8. they/They/ could/ wish/ their/ by/ speaking/ with/ talking/ foreigners/ improve/ skill.

Bài 9: Viết lại câu với những từ cho sẵn.

1. When I was a child, I liked watching cartoons but now I no longer like them.

 When I was a child, I used _____ . 2.

My brother is very lazy, I can't stand him anymore.

 I wish my _____ .

3. I want to be a university student but I can't.

 I wish _____ .

4. When Jim was six, he dreamt of becoming a superhero but now he gives up on that dream.

 When Jim was six, he used _____ . 5.

Mr. Brown never allows her daughter to go to a party although she always want to.

 Mr. Brown's daughter wishes _____ . 6. My

friend always regrets that he doesn't live in the same neighborhood as me.

 My friend wishes _____ . 7.

"What did you use to do in your free time as a child?" Mary asked me.

 Mary asked me what _____ . 8. I

am frustrated because I am cleaning the mess Jim has made.

 I wish I _____ .

Bài 10: Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng đúng của động từ cho sẵn.

dye	be	be	give	ride
have	purchase	play	become	fly

1. We used to _____ things from street vendors when we were small.

2. In the past, Vietnamese women used to _____ their teeth black.

3. I wish there _____ so many natural disasters so that people would not suffer from their consequences.

4. No one in my class used to _____ a buffalo like I did.

5. They didn't use to _____ kites when they lived in the countryside.

6. Extended families used to _____ very popular in Vietnam years ago.

7. Jane wishes someone _____ her a chance to do it over again.

8. I wish I could _____ a well-known artist.
9. Did your mother use to _____ the role of both mother and father when your father was away from home?
10. Tom wishes he (not) _____ to learn at the moment.

Bài 11: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

I have always wondered how life was twenty years ago. I (1) _____ that life in the past was boring and inconvenient (2) _____ the lack of modern facilities. However, I changed my opinion after I heard my grandfather talk about his childhood, in the past, although modern and convenient gadgets were not available, everyone really enjoyed the simple and peaceful life. In the family, the father used to be the (3) _____ while the mother used to just stay home and take care of the house. The saying "Men make houses, women make homes" used to be very popular that day. The children (4) _____ play video games or go on extra classes after school as we (5) _____ today. (6) _____, they could enjoy a variety of outdoor activities with others such as kite flying, rope skipping, so on. In the past many unique customs of Vietnamese people were seen more vividly than today. (7) _____, Vietnamese women used to (8) _____ their teeth black and people used to chew betel nut. It is such a pity that I rarely see those customs today.

1. A. consumed B. presumed C. resumed D. résumé
2. A. because B. despite C. due to D. as
3. A. breadwinner B. pillar C. strongest D. most important
4. A. didn't used to
B. didn't use to C. used to D. use to
5. A. do B. did C. used to do D. didn't use to do
6. A. Besides B. While C. However D. Instead
7. A. Likewise B. For example C. Therefore D. Although
8. A. color B. dye C. make D. paint

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau. Điền T (True) trước câu có chứa thông tin đúng với thông tin bài đọc. Điền F (False) trước câu có chứa thông tin không đúng với nội dung bài đọc. Điền NG (Not Given) trước câu có nội dung không có trong bài đọc.

Vietnam's educational system in the past

Have you ever wondered how teachers, students and classrooms looked like years ago? In the past, Vietnam's educational system was under the influence of by many foreign cultures, of which the Chinese had most significant effects.

The earliest students in Vietnam received most of their education from the Buddhist clergy. Under the 1000-year Invasion and domination of the Chinese, Vietnam's education was greatly affected by China's educational system. This influence is depicted in the early examinations held to recruit high mandarin officials. The first examination of this type was held in 1075, During the latter part of the 11th century, a National College was established for the education of sons or royalty and other high-ranking officials, which marked the beginning of Confucian education in Vietnam. In 1252, the college was opened to students from various backgrounds besides royal or official ones.

At the beginning of the 15th century, many Confucian-type schools were in operation in leading centers. Those days, education became the most cherished ideals. Only those who passed the qualification examinations for Mandarins had any hope of achieving state-owned jobs or other honors. The scholar was looked up to and highly revered. _____ 1. Vietnam's educational system was only affected by Chinese.

_____ 2. The earliest students in Vietnam received their education from the Chinese Buddhist clergy.

_____ 3. The early examinations were held to recruit high mandarin officials.

_____ 4. During the latter part of the 11th century, the National College was opened to every students.

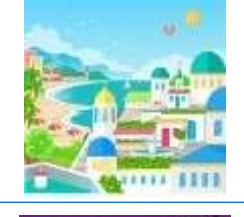
_____ 5. At the beginning of the 15th century, many Confucian-type schools were in operation only in leading centers.

_____ 6. Those days, education was highly appreciated.

_____ 7. The scholar was highly respected to and idolized.

AVOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
administrative /əd'mɪnɪstrətɪv/ (adj)	hành chính; thuộc về hoặc liên quan đến việc quản lý		My sister is an administrative assistant. Chị tôi là một trợ lý hành chính.
astounding /ə'staʊndɪŋ/ (adj)	gây ngạc nhiên		His performance was an astounding success. Màn biểu diễn của anh ấy là một thành công đáng ngạc nhiên.
breathtaking /'breɪtkeɪkɪŋ/ (adj)	đẹp tuyệt		The view from our balcony is breathtaking. Quang cảnh từ ban công của chúng tôi đẹp tuyệt.
citadel /'sɪtədəl/ (n)	thành lũy, thành trì		Hue Citadel is one of the tourist attractions in Vietnam. Kính thành Huế là một trong những điểm thu hút khách du lịch ở Việt Nam.
complex /'kɒmpleks/ (n)	khu liên hợp, quần thể		The Huong Pagoda is a vast complex of Buddhist temples and shrines. Chùa Hương là một quần thể kiến trúc của những ngôi đền và miếu Phật.
fortress /'fɔːtrəs/ (n)	pháo đài		They took refuge in the fortress. Họ đã ẩn náu vào trong pháo đài
monument /'mɒnjumənt/ (n)	đài tượng niệm		There is an ancient monument in my town. Có một đài tưởng niệm cổ ở thị trấn của tôi.

picturesque /ˌpɪktʃə'resk/ (adj)	đẹp		There are many picturesque villages in our country. Có rất nhiều ngôi làng đẹp ở đất nước chúng tôi.
pilgrim /'pɪlgrɪm/ (n)	người hành hương		Every year, many pilgrims travel to Huong Pagoda. Hàng năm, rất nhiều người hành hương đến chùa Hương.
recognition /ˌrekəg'nɪʃn/ (n)	sự công nhận		James received an award in recognition of his significant contribution. James nhận được phần thưởng dựa trên sự công nhận những đóng góp đáng kể của anh ấy.
reign /reɪn/ (n)	triều đại		The One Pillar Pagoda was built under the reign of Emperor Ly Thai Tong. Chùa Một Cột được xây dựng dưới sự trị vì của vua Lý Thái Tông.
rickshaw /'rɪkʃəʊ/ (n)	xích lô		Foreign tourists to Vietnam really like traveling around by rickshaws. Những người khách nước ngoài đến Việt Nam thực sự thích di chuyển bằng xe xích lô.
spectacular /spek'tækjələ(r)/ (adj)	đẹp ngoạn mục		The sunset yesterday was truly spectacular. Cảnh mặt trời lặn ngày hôm qua thực sự là đẹp ngoạn mục.
tomb /tu:m/ (n)	mộ		Pyramids are the tombs of the Pharaoh. Kim tự tháp là lăng mộ của các Pha-ra-ông.
vast /va:st/ (adj)	rộng lớn		There used to be a vast area of forest in my countryside. Đã từng có một khu rừng rộng lớn ở vùng quê của tôi.

GRAMMAR | CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG KHÔNG NGÔI (THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE)

Cách dùng	-Câu bị động không ngôi được dùng để diễn đạt ý kiến của người khác. -Câu bị động không ngôi thường chứa những động từ tường thuật như: say, think, believe, know, hope, expect, report, understand, claim... dạng quá khứ phân từ (V _{pl}).	
Cấu trúc	It + is/ was + V_{pl} + that + S + V (Người ta nói/nghĩ/tin... rằng....)	
Ví dụ	Active (Chủ động)	Passive (Bị động)
	People say that he lives abroad.	It is said that he lives abroad. (Người ta nói rằng anh ấy sống ở nước ngoài.)
	People said that this man stole the car.	It was said that this man stole the car. (Người ta đã nói rằng anh ấy đã lấy cắp chiếc xe ô tô.)
	People think she is a great actress.	It is thought that she is a great actress. (Người ta nghĩ rằng cô ấy là một diễn viên giỏi)

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN**Bài 1: Gạch chân những lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.**

- It reported that the storm had destroyed more than 100 houses in that area. _____
- People are thought that travelling is very costly. _____
- It was claimed that there will be financial support for the homeless. _____
- Did it said that the building was reconstructed in 1967? _____
- Do people believed that learning is a lifetime journey? _____
- They aren't believe that they will lose the competition. _____
- Was it rumor last year that Jane set off for Paris and never returned? _____
- It is claimed by the authorities last year that they would help the poor people. _____

Bài 2: Sắp xếp các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

- believed/ people/ will/ is/ on/ Mars/ future/ the/ widely/ It/ that/ live/ in.

- that/ \$200/ was/ was/ it/ reported/ donated/ build/ to/ park/ local/ the.

- It/ yesterday/that/ Jim/ would/ meeting/ to/ come/ the/ Was/ expected?

4. is/ that/is/ a/ view/ hotel/from/of/ spectacular/the/ It/claimed/there/ mountain/that.

5. in/ It/ Vietnam/ is/ that/ should/ believed/ rickshaw/ by/ travelling/ try/ tourists.

6. that/ that/ there/ many/ cottages/ It/ many/ was/ rumored/ picturesque/ village/ in.

7. breathtaking/ of/ claimed/ was/ lake/ that/ could/ be/ scene/ here/ It/ a/ the/ seen/ from.

8. these/ for/ road/ rumored/ that/ Is/ trees/ it/ be/ cut/ down/ construction/ will.

Bài 3: Chuyển những câu chủ động sau thành câu bị động.

1. They believe that Jim is going to study abroad.

2. People rumored that there was a ghost in that house.

3. Someone said that Jane would be able to win the contest.

4. They claimed that everything they said was true.

5. They reported that there was a serious accident on the main road.

6. They don't think that this camera costs that much.

_____ 7. Did they claim that they had managed to solve the problem?

_____ 8. People didn't expect that the building collapsed after the storm.

Bài 4: Dựa vào những từ cho trước, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. It/ widely/ believe/ that/ghosts/ really/ exist.

2. It/ rumor/ last/ year/ that/ group/ of/ gangster/ destroy/ part/ of/ the/ building.

3. It/ report/ that/ there/ be/ increase/ in/ number/ of/ tourists/ last/ year.

4. It/ think/ the winner/ be/ team/ A/ but/ it/ turn/out/ to be/ team B.

5. It/ claim/ by/ local/authorities/ that/community house/ build/ next/ year.

6. It/ forecast/ that/ terrible/ storm/ come.

7. It/ tell/Jim/take/gap/year/ after/ he/ finish/ high/school.

8. It/ believe/ national/ heritages/ need/ preserve.

II

CÁCH DÙNG ĐỘNG TỪ SUGGEST (SUGGEST + V-ING/ CLAUSE WITH SHOULD)

Cấu trúc	1.S + suggest+V-ing 2. S + suggest + (that) + S + (should) + V nguyên mẫu
Cách dùng	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Ta sử dụng cấu trúc với "suggest" khi đưa ra một đề xuất, ý kiến. - Cấu trúc "suggest + V-ing" được dùng để nói chung chung, không ám chỉ một người cụ thể nào. - Cấu trúc "suggest that + S + V" khi muốn khuyên một người hoặc một nhóm người cụ thể.

Ví dụ	<p>- I suggest (that) we go out to have dinner. I know a very good restaurant. (Tôi đề nghị chúng ta ra ngoài ăn tối. Tôi biết 1 nhà hàng rất ngon.)</p> <p>- Her doctor suggested that she should reduce her working hours and take more exercise. (Bác sĩ của cô ấy đề nghị rằng cô ấy nên giảm thời gian làm việc và tập thể dục nhiều hơn.)</p> <p>- He suggested travelling together for safety, since the area was so dangerous. (Anh ấy đề xuất nên đi du lịch cùng nhau cho an toàn vì khu vực đó rất nguy hiểm.)</p>
Chú ý	<p>Trong trường hợp dùng mệnh đề “that” thì động từ theo sau luôn ở dạng nguyên mẫu không “to”,.</p> <p>Ví dụ:</p> <p>The doctor suggests that he lose some weights. (chủ ngữ là “he” nhưng động từ “lose” không chia.)</p>

Bài 5: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

1. My father suggested that I (took/take) an English course this year.
2. My brother suggested (playing/ to play) cards while waiting for our mother.
3. The doctor suggests that Jim (do/ does) more exercises to keep fit.
4. Mr. Brown suggests that his son (doing/ do) his homework before hanging out with friends.
5. Jane suggested (should hold/ holding) a party next week.
6. Peter suggested that I (changed/ change) my sandals into rain boots because it was raining outside.
7. The mayor suggests that there (should be/ was) more trees along the main roads.
8. I suggested (we took/taking) part in the competition because of the huge prize.
9. Does Mr. Brown suggest that Peter (goes/ go) to school on his own?
10. My professor suggested that I (should not choose/ not choose) that course for the next semester.

Bài 6: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. They suggest that you (keep) _____ working hard to achieve your goal.
2. Peter suggested that Jane (not spend) _____ too much time on computer.
3. My friend suggested (not take) _____ the dog for a walk as it was snowing outside.
4. The bookseller suggested his customer (buy) _____ the newly released book of a famous author.
5. My teacher suggests that we (use) _____ paperback dictionary to look up new words instead of using online dictionary.
6. It is suggested that children (learn) _____ a foreign language at an early age.
7. The tour guide suggested that we (try) _____ the local specialties.
8. My classmates suggest (throw) _____ a party to celebrate the Teacher's Day.

Bài 7: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. My neighbor/ suggest/ have/ dinner/ together.

_____ 2. My
father/ suggest/ my sister/ visit/ my grandparent/ more/ often.

_____ 3.
They/ suggest/there/ be/ more/streetlight/in/this/ neighborhood.

_____ 4.
Mary/ suggest/ go/ out/ for/ picnic/ tomorrow?

_____ 5.
Salesman/ suggest/ Jim/ choose/ black/ trousers.

_____ 6. Peter/ suggest/ listen/ to/ radio/ instead of/ watch/ TV.

_____ 7. I/
suggest/ you/ not/ be/ lazy/ anymore.

_____ 8. They/ suggest/ sit/ in/ circle/ and/ share/ stories/ with/ others.

Bài 8: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. Jim suggested playing the piano and sang along. _____
2. The teacher suggested that I should rewrite my essay and submitted it later. _____
3. The instructor suggested that Jane paid more attention to his instructions. _____
4. Peter suggest playing badminton everyday after school. _____
5. My team suggested to work together and come up with the solution. _____
6. Mr. Johnson suggested that there was an air-conditioner in this room. _____
7. I suggest the room is cleaned before I come back. _____
8. My parents suggested me go out and make some friends. _____

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 9: Chuyển những câu chủ động sau thành câu bị động.

1. No one expected that I would fail the final exam.

2. Do they think that they will have the chance to visit that place?

3.

They expected that this summer holiday would be swelteringly hot.

4.

They reported that a vast area of forest in my hometown was destroyed.

5. Did

they believe that the information was true?

6. Did anyone hope that there would be a significant change in the standards of living?

7. They never believe that Peter and Jane will get married.

8. People know that there is no life on Mars.

Bài 10: Hoàn thành những câu sau với dạng đúng của những động từ cho sẵn.

get	hold	visit	buy
go	travel	pay	carry

1. My foreign friend suggested _____ sightseeing in the suburbs this weekend.

2. Mrs. Brown suggested _____ the most famous tourist attractions in Vietnam this summer holiday.

3. My mother suggested that I _____ back my energy after studying hard by going on picnic

4. Peter suggested that I _____ my children some bracelets as souvenir after my business trip to Chinese.

5. Mary suggested that we _____ to the South of Vietnam this summer.

6. Did the teacher suggest that we _____ a project on preserving wonders of Vietnam?

7. Peter suggests _____ a small party to celebrate his friend's birthday tomorrow.

8. My uncle suggested that our family _____ a visit to Huong Pagoda.

Bài 11: Dựa vào những thông tin cho sẵn, hãy viết câu gợi ý với “suggest”.

0. “Peter should learn English.” The teacher said.

 The teacher suggested that Peter (should) learn English.

1. “It’s a good idea that you take a rest from work.” My sister said to me.

 _____

2. “How about going to the sea this weekend?” Tom asked.

 _____

3. “Jim, you should never play truant again.” Jane said.

 _____

4. “Why don’t we go out and enjoy the weather?” My mom said.

 _____

5. “If you visit Hanoi, you should go to Hoan Kiem Lake.” My friend told me.

 _____

6. “Jane, why don’t you finish your homework before going out?” Jane’s mother said.

 _____

7. “Let’s work out the solution together!” Peter says.

 _____

8. My father advised me to take any opportunities that I had.

 _____

Bài 12: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

Ha Long Bay

Ha Long Bay is one of the most famous tourist (1) _____ in Viet Nam. It (2) _____ among the Seven Wonders of the World. In the old Vietnamese, “Ha Long” literally means “descending dragons”, (3) _____ its popularity, not many people know about the legend behind its name. (4) _____ has it that at the early time of the country, Vietnamese people had to fight against aggressive invaders from the North through the sea. The Jade Emperor then sent the Mother Dragon and her children to help Vietnamese (5) _____ the enemy and protect their homeland. The dragons destroyed the enemy’s army by fire and giant emeralds from their mouths. These emeralds then (6) _____ around the battlefield on the sea and created a defensive wall, which made the enemy’s ships all sink. It (7) _____ that the wall of emerald turned (8) _____ island and islets that we can see today. After the battle. The Mother Dragon and her children didn’t come back to the heaven, but stayed with the ancient Vietnamese and help people build their country.

1. A. appeals B. attentions C. attractions D. attachments

2. A. Is listed B. is listing C. lists D. listed

3. A. But B. yet C. Despite D. In spite
4. A. Story B. Tale C. Fable D. Legend
5. A. defeat B. defeated C. defeating D. are defeated
6. A. went B. scattered C. turned D. mattered
7. A. is believed B. believes C. was believed D. believed
8. A. into B. out C. off D. on

Bài 13: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Weather forecast from dawn to dusk on 10 March

General:

Cloudy, some rain

Areas of flow pressure will move east across the British Isles

Southeast and Eastern England:

Cloudy, a little rain or mist in places at first. Some sunny intervals developing. Wind southerly light to moderate. Mild maximum temperature 11 to 12°C.

Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England:

Mostly cloudy, some sunny intervals rain spreading from west later. Wind southerly, moderate to strong. Temperature a little above normal maximum 10 to 12°C.

Southwest England and Wales:

Cloudy, rain spreading from West, continuing well into the night. Wind southerly moderate. Temperature a little above normal, maximum 10 to 12°C.

Central, Southern and Northwest Scotland:

Cloudy, occasional rain or mist, more steady rain spreading from West. Wind southerly, moderate or strong. Temperature a little above normal, maximum 8 to 10°C.

Northeast Scotland, Orkney, Shetland:

Mostly cloudy, a little rain or mist, more steady rain later. Wind southerly strong. Temperature a little above normal, 7 to 9°C

Outlook for the next 24 hours

Occasional rain in some areas will die out and be followed by brighter weather spreading from the west. Mild at first, becoming cooler.

1. In which part of the British Isles will the weather be driest on 10 March?
 - A. Southeast and Eastern England
 - B. Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England
 - C. Southwest England and Wales
 - D. Central, Southwest and Northwest Scotland
2. In general, the pattern of weather across the British Isles on 10 March is that
 - A. rain will die out later in the day.
 - B. rain will increase during the day.
 - C. it will rain on and off all day.

- D. it will rain steadily in most places.
3. Where will there be most rain during the day?
- A. Southeast and Eastern England
 - B. Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England
 - C. South England and Wales
 - D. North east Scotland, Orkney, Shetland
4. The temperature will not rise above 10°C in the following area
- A. Southeast and Eastern England
 - B. Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England
 - C. South West England and Wales
 - D. Central, Southern and Northwest Scotland
5. It appears that in general the weather on 11 March will be

UNIT

06

- A. very much the same
- B. much wetter
- C. much warmer
- D. more sunny

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
considerable /kən'sɪdərəbl/ (adj)	đáng kể		I wasted a considerable amount of time and money on this project. Tôi đã lãng phí một lượng lớn thời gian và tiền của cho dự án này.
cooperative /kəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/ (adj)	có tính hợp tác		My classmates are highly cooperative. Bạn cùng lớp tôi rất hợp tác với nhau.
dramatic /drə'mætɪk/ (adj)	gây ấn tượng, đáng kể		Jane made a dramatic improvement in her work. Jane đã có những tiến bộ đáng kể trong công việc.

flyover /'flaɪəʊvə(r)/ (n)	cầu vượt		<p>A flyover will be built next year.</p> <p>Một cây cầu vượt sẽ được xây dựng vào năm sau.</p>
gradual /'grædʒuəl/ (adj)	dần dần		<p>He is making gradual recovery from his disease.</p> <p>Anh ấy đang phục hồi dần dần từ căn bệnh.</p>
manual /'mænjuəl/ (adj)	bằng tay		<p>This company provides numerous manual jobs for the local residents.</p> <p>Công ty này mang đến rất nhiều công việc lao động chân tay cho người dân địa phương.</p>
mushroom /'mʌʃrʊm/ (v)	phát triển nhanh và mạnh		<p>The service industry in our country has mushroomed recently.</p> <p>Ngành công nghiệp dịch vụ đã phát triển mạnh mẽ gần đây.</p>
nuclear family /'nju:kliə(r)/	gia đình hạt nhân (chỉ có vợ chồng và con cái)		<p>A nuclear family is believed to bring benefits to a child's development.</p> <p>Gia đình hạt nhân được tin là sẽ có ích cho sự phát triển của trẻ.</p>
obedient /ə'bi:diənt/ (adj)	vâng lời, ngoan ngoãn		<p>Jim is obedient while his brother is not.</p> <p>Jim rất biết vâng lời còn em trai cậu ấy thì không.</p>
significant /sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ (adj)	đáng kể		<p>We are witnessing a significant development in technology.</p> <p>Chúng ta đang chứng kiến sự phát triển đáng kể trong công nghệ.</p>
slight /slait/ (adj)	nhỏ, không đáng kể		<p>The damage was slight.</p> <p>Thiệt hại không đáng kể.</p>

suffer /'sʌfə(r)/ (v)	chịu đựng		Many people are suffering from obesity nowadays. Rất nhiều người đang phải chịu đựng bệnh béo phì ngày nay.
sympathetic /,sɪmpə'tetɪk/ (adj)	có lòng đồng cảm		I felt very sympathetic towards Jane. Tôi thấy rất đồng cảm với Jane.
thatched house /θætʃt haʊs/	nhà lá		A majority of Vietnamese people used to live in thatched houses. Một phần lớn người Việt Nam đã từng ở nhà lá.
tiled /taɪld/ (adj)	lợp ngói		We are going to build a tiled house. Chúng tôi sẽ xây một ngôi nhà lợp ngói.
tolerant /'tɒlərənt/ (adj)	chịu đựng		My mother is very tolerant of my mistakes. Mẹ tôi chịu đựng được những sai lầm của tôi.
tram /træm/ (n)	xe điện công cộng		Have you ever traveled by tram? Bạn đã bao giờ di chuyển bằng xe điện công cộng chưa?
trench /trentʃ/ (n)	hào chiến đấu		Trenches were very popular in Vietnam during wartime. Hào chiến đấu rất phổ biến ở Việt Nam trong thời kì chiến tranh.
unprofessional /,ʌnpɹə'feʃnl/ (adj)	không chuyên nghiệp		I can't put up with his unprofessional presentation. Tôi không chịu đựng được phần thuyết trình thiếu chuyên nghiệp của anh ta.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH (PAST PERFECT)

1. A/an

Cấu trúc	<p>(+) S + had + V_{PII} (past participle).</p> <p>(-) S + had not/ hadn't + V_{PII}.</p> <p>(?) Had + S + V_{PII}?</p> <p>→ Yes, S + had./ No, S + hadn't</p>
Ví dụ	<p>(+) I had left when they came. (Khi họ đến thì tôi đã rời đi rồi.)</p> <p>(-) I hadn't left when they came. (Khi họ đến thì tôi đã không rời đi.)</p> <p>(?) Had you left when they came? (Khi họ đến, bạn đã rời đi rồi à?)</p> <p>Had you not left when they came? (Khi họ đến, bạn đã không rời đi à?)</p> <p>Hadn't you left when they came? (Khi họ đến, bạn đã không rời đi à?)</p>
Cách dùng	<p>-Diễn tả một hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.</p> <p>Ví dụ: He had left the house before she came.</p> <p>-Diễn ra một hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.</p> <p>Ví dụ: We had had lunch by two o'clock yesterday.</p> <p>By the age of 25, he had written two famous novels.</p>
Dấu hiệu nhận biết	<p>by + thời gian trong quá khứ before, after, when, by the time, as soon as, as...</p>

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

1. Before hanging out with friends, Jim (do) _____ his homework.
2. Peter told me that he (already finish) _____ reading 'Harry Potter'.
3. Mary said she (never be) _____ to Paris before.
4. When we came to the movie theater, the film (start) _____.
5. Where _____ (Jim/ be) before you found him?
6. Peter (travel) _____ to 5 foreign countries on business trips before he retired.
7. My mother (write) _____ me a note before she left for work.
8. I wish I (not attend) _____ that meeting.
9. Jim (read) _____ all his books before he bought a new one yesterday.
10. _____ (you/ clean) your room before you went out?

Bài 2: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành hoặc quá khứ đơn.

1. Mr. Brown (come) _____ home as soon as he (finish) _____ his work.
2. I (live) _____ in Texas for 4 years before I (move) _____ California.
3. When Mr. Smith (wake) _____ yesterday morning, breakfast (already be) _____ ready.
4. Before I (get) _____ promotion, I (work) _____ very hard.
5. Yesterday, my mother (pick) _____ me up from school before we (go) _____ shopping together.
6. Our grandparent (tell) _____ us that he (serve) _____ in the army in 1945.
7. After having dinner with my boyfriend, I (go) _____ home.
8. Yesterday (be) _____ the first time Jane (perform) _____ in front of such large audience.
9. Peter (admit) _____ he (break) _____ my favorite vase the day before.
10. What _____ (you/do) before you (come) _____ there?
11. Yesterday I (feel) _____ nervous as I (not prepare) _____ my presentation carefully.
12. _____ (Peter/ come) to see you after he (finish) _____ his work?
13. Mary (prepare) _____ the meal before she (invite) _____ her new neighbor to have lunch with her.
14. Before I (buy) _____ a car, I (travel) _____ by bus for nearly 5 years.
15. As soon as Jane (see) _____ Jim, she (storm) _____ out of the room.

Bài 3: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, hãy viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Before/ Peter/ go/ university/ ,/ he/ take/ gap/ year.

2. Where/ you/ be/ before/ you/ come/ home.

3. There/ be/ many/ trees/ along/ street/ before/ people/ cut/ them/ down

4. Jim/ be/ very/ upset/ before/ Mary / cheer/ him/ up.

5. She/ tell/ me/ yesterday/ she/ not/ finish/ her/ assignment/ yet.

6. What/ happen/ after/ Jim/ propose/ to/ Jane?

7. You/ eat/ dinner/ before/ you/ come/ here?

8. Peter/ travel/ a lot/ before/ his leg/ seriously/ injure/ in/ accident.

Bài 4: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng dạng đúng của các động từ trong ngoặc.

commute	be	(not) build	suffer	do
evacuate	cooperate	try	mushroom	want

1. In the past, people _____ by tram before it was replaced by other modern meanstransport.
2. Our family _____ from poverty before we received help from the local people.
3. There _____ only slight increase in the amount of money we earned each month afterI changed my job.
4. The service industry in our region _____ before the recession.
5. They _____ any flyovers in our area before 2014.
6. Mary and Jane _____ closely in the project before they hated each other.
7. What _____ (people) to earn a living before they worked in that factory?
8. They _____ several times before they gave up on their dream.
9. The local authorities _____ people from the dangerous area before the flood came.
10. I (always) _____ to become a superman before I realized that superman wasn't real.

II CẤU TRÚC TÍNH TỪ

1. Cấu trúc tính từ đi cùng với động từ nguyên thể có "to" (Adjective + to-infinitive)

Cấu trúc 1

Cách dùng	Cấu trúc tính từ + động từ nguyên thể có “to” có ý nghĩa “thật là thế nào để làm gì” hoặc “thật như thế nào để ai đó làm gì” dùng để nhấn mạnh thông tin.
Cấu trúc	It + be + adj + (for O) + to V....
Ví dụ	It's hard to believe that she failed the exam. (Thật khó để tin rằng cô ấy bị trượt kỳ thi.) It was easy for her to pass the exam. (Thật dễ dàng để cô ấy đỗ kỳ thi.)
	It is boring to go to the meeting. (Đi đến buổi họp thì thật là nhàm chán.) It was dangerous for Harry to drive fast. (Thật là nguy hiểm khi Harry lái xe nhanh.) It's interesting to talk to you. (Nói chuyện với bạn thật là thú vị.) It's difficult to learn Japanese. (Học tiếng Nhật thì rất khó.)

Cấu trúc 2

Cách dùng	Cấu trúc tính từ + động từ nguyên thể có “to” còn được dùng để diễn tả phản ứng, cảm xúc, sự tự tin hay sự lo lắng...
Cấu trúc	S + be + adj + to V
Các tính từ thông dụng	happy (vui), glad (vui), pleased (hài lòng), relieved (nhẹ nhõm), sorry (tiếc), certain (chắc chắn), sure (chắc chắn), confident (tự tin), convinced (tin chắc), afraid (sợ), annoyed (hơi giận), astonished (ngạc nhiên), aware (nhận thấy, biết), conscious (tỉnh, có ý thức, biết được)...
Ví dụ	Tom was surprised to see you. (Tom ngạc nhiên khi thấy bạn.) He's afraid to stay home alone at night. (Anh ấy sợ ở nhà một mình vào ban đêm.) I'm very pleased to see you here. (Tôi rất vui mừng khi được gặp anh ở đây.) I was sorry to hear that your father is ill. (Tôi lấy làm tiếc khi nghe rằng cha của anh bị ốm.)

2. Cấu trúc tính từ đi cùng với mệnh đề danh từ (Adjective + that-clause)

Cách dùng	Cấu trúc tính từ + mệnh đề danh từ được dùng để diễn tả cảm xúc, sự tin tưởng hay sự lo lắng... Mệnh đề danh từ được cấu tạo bởi “that + mệnh đề”.
Cấu trúc	S + be + adj + that + S + V...
Các tính từ thông dụng	Chỉ cảm xúc: happy (vui), glad (vui), delight (vui mừng), pleased (hài lòng), relieved (nhẹ nhõm), sorry (tiếc), surprising (ngạc nhiên) ... Chỉ sự tin tưởng hay lo lắng: certain (chắc chắn), sure (chắc chắn), confident (tự tin), convinced (tin chắc), afraid (sợ), annoyed (hơi giận), astonished (ngạc nhiên), aware (nhận thấy, biết), conscious (tỉnh, có ý thức, biết được)...

Ví dụ

I am delighted that you passed your exam. (Tôi rất vui vì anh đã vượt qua kỳ thi.) It was quite surprising that he passed the examination.

(Thật đáng ngạc nhiên là anh ấy đã thi đậu.)

I am afraid that I can't accept this assignment.

(Tôi e rằng tôi không thể nhận nhiệm vụ này.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 5: Dựa vào những từ cho trước, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. It/ hard/ Jim/ do/ this/ task.

2. It/ not/easy/ me/ pass/ the/ test.

_____ 3.

It/ challenging/ you/ change/ your/ job/ now.

_____ 4.

Mary/always/afraid/try/anything/new.

_____ 5.

You/ confident/win/ the/competition?

_____ 6. My

mother/ pleased/ see/ me/ at/ home/ now.

7. I/ sorry/ to/ hear/ that/ you/ have/ accident/ last week.

_____ 8.

I/glad/you/come/to/my/party.

9. It/ not/ surprising/ Peter/ be/ best/ student/ in/ his/ class.

10. I/ convinced/ Peter/ be/ right.

Bài 6: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. I sure that you have mistaken my pen for yours. _____

2. Peter is not confident presenting his ideas to the class. _____
3. It is impossible that a fish to climb a tree. _____
4. Is it possible for me winning this competition? _____
5. Mr. Brown was relieved hearing his wife was not injured in the accident. _____
6. Are you certain that he to be the pickpocket? _____
7. Peter astonished that he accidentally found his childhood toy. _____
8. It is difficult for you pass the test if you don't study hard. _____
9. Were they be able to swim across that river? _____
10. They don't aware that staying up late is bad for health. _____

Bài 7: Sắp xếp

các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. that/ I/ thankful/ me/ so/ homework/ with/ my/ you/ am/ help.

2. difficult/ It/ English/ has/ learn/very/to/for/me/been.

3. museum/ me/ the/ it's/ to/ interesting/ go/ to/ for.

4. Peter/ yesterday/ was/ party/ his/ to/ came/ glad/ birthday/ that/ his/ classmates.

5. boring/ to/ very/ attend/ be/ that/ must/ It/ meeting.

6. It's/ week/ Jim/ next/ will/ hard/ house/ his/ to/ move/ believe/ that.

7. dangerous/ play/ It's/for/to/ children/ knife/ with.

8. sure/ he/ my/ stolen/ I/ that/ am/ has/ bike.

Bài 8: Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi.

1. Learning English is not difficult for me.
 It is _____.
2. Jim was very confident when he said that he was the best.
 Jim was very confident to _____.
3. Peter received a letter from his foreign friend yesterday. He was very happy about it.
 Peter was very happy to _____.
4. I can't come to your party this weekend, I'm afraid.

I am afraid _____. 5.

Doing gardening is not as easy as it looks.

It is not _____.

6. I had no difficulty in making the last decision.

It was not _____.

7. I think Peter is very happy. He has won a lottery.

I think Peter is very happy that _____. 8.

You were so lucky. You ran into a famous singer.

You were so lucky to _____.

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 9: Cho dạng đúng của các động từ trong ngoặc.

- By the age of 25, Mr. Brown (own) _____ a large house and two expensive car.
- I (expect) _____ that May would come before she (tell) _____ me that she couldn't afford time.
- It (be) _____ very difficult for me (carry) _____ this project before my professor (give) _____ some advice.
- Yesterday, my mom (be) _____ very angry (find) _____ out that I (not do) _____ the laundry yet.
- _____ (you/ stay) in your room before you mother (find) _____ you?
- By the time we (arrive) _____ at the station, the train (already leave) b _____ for 15 minutes.
- When Jim (come) _____ home, he (be) _____ angry (realize) _____ that someone (break) _____ into his house.
- _____ (it/be) hard for you (understand) _____ the lesson yesterday?
- As soon as the teacher (walk) _____ into the classroom, she (be) _____ surprised that her students (prepare) _____ a birthday present for her.
- _____ (you/ be) confident that you would win the competition?

Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. By/ the/ time/ Peter/ come/ ,/ everyone/ already/ leave.

_____ 2.

They/ really/ enjoy/ themselves/ at/ party / before/ they/ have/ go/ home.

_____ 3. It/

be/ boring/ me/ learn/ Japanese/ before/ I/ have/ new/ teacher.

4. Yesterday/ it/ surprising/ that/ my sister/ took/ dinner/ before / I/ come/ home.

_____ 5. I/

annoyed/ that/ my brother/ not/ clean/ the house/ before/ he/ go/ out.

- _____ 6.
You/ happy/ know/ that/ your mother/give/you/a special/gift/yesterday?
_____ 7.
Peter/ disappointed/ know/his/final scores.

8. It/ difficult/ me/ accept/ the fact/ that/ I/ not/ get/ that/job.

Bài 11: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

It is not difficult (1) _____ to imagine how life used to be in the past. My grandfather (2) _____ keen on telling me about people and things of his generation before he (3) _____ away. According to what he said, life in the Vietnamese traditional village was very peaceful, (4) _____ it was exciting. People often lived very closely to others and they formed a neat society. Although there weren't any convenient means of communication such as telephone or email, people still kept in touch and interacted with each other. They were happy (5) _____ their stories with their family and neighbors. Sometimes, they even (6) _____ their neighbors as relatives and always supported others. It was very common in those days (7) _____ villagers to gather up in the communal house to watch TV or listen to radio together because there was often only one or two TV in a small village. My grandfather said that he preferred life in the past (8) _____ the modern life since people were friendlier and more caring.

1. A. for me B. for my C. to me D. that I
2. A. has always been B. had always been C. was always D. is always
3. A. has passed B. had passed C. passed D. passes
4. A. when B. although C. yet D. instead
5. A. shared B. sharing C. shares D. to share
6. A. called B. regarded C. made D. turned
7. A. to B. on C. for D. that
8. A. to B. on C. than D. that

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Polyester is now being used for bottles. ICI, the chemicals and plastics company, believes that it is now beginning to break the grip of glass on the bottle business and thus take advantage of this huge market.

All the plastics manufacturers have been experiencing hard times as their traditional products have been doing badly world-wide for the last few years. Between 1982 and 1984 the Plastics Division of ICI had lost a hundred and twenty million dollars, and they felt that the most hopeful new market was in packaging, bottles and cans.

Since 1982 it has opened three new factories' producing "Melinar", the raw material from which high quality polyester bottles are made.

The polyester bottle was born in the 1970s, when soft drinks companies: like Coca Cola started selling their drinks in grant two-litre containers. Because of the build-up of the pressure of gas

in these large containers, glass was unsuitable. Nor was PVC, the plastic which had been used for bottles since the 1960s, suitable for drinks with gas in them. A new plastic had to be made.

Glass is still cheaper for the smaller bottles, and will continue to be so unless oil and plastic become much cheaper, but plastic does well for the larger sizes.

Polyester bottles are virtually unbreakable. The manufacturers claim they are also lighter, less noisy when being handled, and can be re-used. Shopkeepers and other business people are unlikely to object to a change from glass to polyester, since these bottles mean few breakages, which are costly and time-consuming. The public, though, have been more difficult to persuade. ICI's commercial department is developing different bottles with interesting shapes, to try and make them visually more attractive to the public.

The next step could be to develop a plastic which could replace tins for food. The problem here is the high temperatures necessary for cooking the food in the container.

1. Plastics of various kinds have been used for making bottles
A. since 1982.
B. since the 1970s but only for large bottles.
C. since the 1960s but not for liquids with gas in them.
D. since companies like Coca Cola first tried them.
2. Why is ICI's Plastics Division interested in polyester for bottles?
A. The other things they make are not selling well.
B. Glass manufacturers cannot make enough new bottles.
C. They have factories which could be adapted to make it.
D. The price of oil keeps changing.
3. Why aren't all bottles now made of polyester?
A. The price of oil and plastic has risen.
B. It is not suitable for containing gassy drinks.
C. The public like traditional glass bottles.
D. Shop keepers dislike re-usable bottles.
4. Manufacturers think polyester bottles are better than glass bottles because they
A. are cheaper.
B. are more suited to small sizes.
C. are more exciting to look at.
D. do not break easily.
5. Plastic containers for holding food in the same way as cans
A. have been used for many years.
B. are an idea that interests the plastics companies.
C. are possible, but only for hot food.
D. are the first things being made in the new factories.

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
celery /'seləri/ (n)	cần tây		My bother doesn't like the taste of celery. <i>Anh tôi không thích vị của cần tây.</i>
chop /tʃɒp/ (v)	băm, chặt nhỏ		My mother told me to chop the celery. <i>Mẹ bảo tôi băm nhỏ cần tây.</i>
drain /dreɪn/ (v)	để ráo nước		You should leave the dishes to drain. <i>Bạn nên để chén đĩa ráo nước.</i>
garnish /'gɑːnɪʃ/ (v)	trang trí món ăn		My birthday cake was garnished with chocolate. <i>Bánh sinh nhật của tôi đượctrang trí với sô-cô-la.</i>
grate /greɪt/ (v)	nạo		Grate the cheese and put it on top of the cake. <i>Nạo pho-mát rồi đặt nó lên trên chiếc bánh.</i>
grill /grɪl/ (v)	nướng		These sausages need grilling for three minutes. <i>Những cái xúc xích này cần được nướng trong ba phút.</i>

ingredient /ɪnˈɡriːdiənt/ (n)	nguyên liệu		These sausages need grilling for three minutes. Những cái xúc xích này cần được nướng trong ba phút.
marinate /ˈmærɪneɪt/ (v)	ướp		It's better if you marinate the chicken before cooking it. Sẽ tốt hơn nếu bạn ướp gà trước khi nấu.
puree /ˈpjʊəri/ (n)	món nghiền		Apple puree has always been my favorite food. Táo nghiền vẫn luôn là món yêu thích của tôi.
shallot /ʃəˈlɒt/ (n)	hành khô		Shallots are common ingredients in Vietnamese dishes. Hành khô là thành phần quen thuộc trong các món ăn Việt Nam.
simmer /sɪmə(r)/ (v)	sủi, sắp sôi, ninh		Simmer the stew for at least one hour. Ninh món hầm trong vòng ít nhất một giờ.
spring onion /sprɪŋˈʌnjən/ (n)	hành lá		Did you remember to buy spring onion? Bạn có nhớ mua hành lá không?
sprinkle /ˈsprɪŋkl/ (v)	rải, rắc		I helped my mom sprinkle chocolate on top of the cake. Tôi giúp mẹ tôi rắc sô-cô-la lên bánh.
stew /stjuː/ (v)	hầm		We often have stewed beef for dinner. Chúng tôi thường ăn bò hầm vào bữa tối.

versatile /'vɜːsətaɪl/ (adj)	đa năng		I want to buy a versatile kitchen tool. Tôi muốn mua một dụng cụ làm bếp đa năng.
whisk /wɪsk/ (v)	đánh, trộn		You mustn't whisk all the ingredients together. Bạn không được trộn tất cả những nguyên liệu vào với nhau.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG (QUANTIFIERS)

1. A/an

Cách dùng	"a" và "an" (một) là hai mạo từ được dùng cho danh từ đếm được số ít. "a" đứng trước phụ âm, "an" đứng trước nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i).
Ví dụ	-There is a cat. (Có một con mèo.) -There isn't a house. (Không có một ngôi nhà.) -Is there an egg? (Có một quả trứng không?)

2. Some/ Any

Some (một vài, một ít)	Any (nào)
"Some" được dùng trong câu khẳng định và lời mời, yêu cầu. Ví dụ: Would you like some tea? (Bạn dùng một ít trà nhé?)	"Any" được dùng trong câu phủ định hoặc câu hỏi. Ví dụ: Do you have any pens? (Bạn có chiếc bút nào không?)
"Some" đứng trước danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ đếm được số nhiều. Ví dụ: There are some butter. (Có một chút bơ) There are some eggs. (Có một vài quả trứng)	"Any" đứng trước danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ đếm được số nhiều. Ví dụ: There isn't any butter. (Không có chút bơ nào cả.) Are there any eggs? (Có quả trứng nào không?)

3. Từ định lượng cho đồ ăn

A teaspoon of honey (một thìa trà (nhỏ) mật ong)	A cup of soda (một cốc soda)	A tin of sardine (một hộp (lon) cá trích)
A tablespoon of sugar (một thìa xúp (đầy) đường)	A bottle of wine (một chai rượu)	A piece of bread (một mẩu bánh mì)
A pot of jam (một hũ mứt)	A carton of cookies (một hộp bánh quy)	A kilo of rice (một cân gạo)

A slice of bread (một lát bánh mì)	A glass of beer (một ly bia)	A leaf of lettuce (một lá rau diếp)
A bowl of soup (một bát súp)	A drop of oil (một giọt dầu)	A bag of pepper (một túi hạt tiêu)
A pinch of salt (một nhúm muối)	A stick of cinnamon (một thanh/ cây quế)	A bunch of bananas (một chùm/ nải chuối)
A head of cabbage (một cây bắp cải)	A handful of cherry tomatoes (một nắm cà chua bi)	A loaf of bread (một ổ mì)
A clove of garlic (một nhánh tỏi)	A liter of water (một lít nước)	A pitcher of lemonade (một bình nước chanh)

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Điền 'a', 'an' hoặc Ø vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

- Mary spent _____ hours preparing a four-course meal for her family.
- _____ apple a day keeps the doctor away.
- It may take you up to _____ hour to make this dish.
- You should drink _____ glass of warm water and take _____ rest
- Jane have _____ beautiful eyes.
- Jane is studying at _____ university in Australia.
- Can you take _____ care of the house when I am not home?
- It is _____ honor for me to be invited to your party
- _____ sheep were gazing in the fields over there.
- I have to wear _____ uniform when I go to school.
- I asked Mr. Brown to keep _____ eye on your house when we were away
- The English test was just _____ piece of cake to me. I didn't worry much about it.
- _____ police suspect a local gang.
- This is _____ expensive restaurant. We should find another one.
- The room is in _____ need of a thorough clean.

Bài 2: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

- Mary doesn't need (some/ any) help from others as she can do it by herself.
- There aren't (some/ any) flowers in my garden.
- Excuse me, I need (some/ any) information about the flights to Moscow next Monday.
- We went shopping although we didn't intend to buy (some/ any) clothes.
- I wish that my teacher wouldn't give us (some/ any) homework today.
- I'm exhausted. I want to have (some/ any) time to get back my energy.
- Do we have (some/ any) money to buy a new carpet? This one is too old.
- I don't have any wet tissues but Jane has (some/ any).
- Yesterday the interviewer asked me (some/ any) questions related to my previous job.

10. I hope that you will put (some/ any) more effort in your learning.
11. I bought (some/ any) milk and (some/ any) cheese yesterday.
12. It was such a pity that they didn't have (some/ any) more tickets to sell.
13. I really need (some/ any) help from my friends at the moment.
14. Jim wants to have (some/ any) new shoes.
15. I think I should prepare (some/ any) cookies in case Jim wants to eat.

Bài 3: Điền 'a', 'an', 'some' hoặc 'any' vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

1. Have you heard _____ news about the accident on the main road?
2. It is a pity that I don't have _____ camera now.
3. My brother likes _____ modern music.
4. I realized that _____ strange man was following me.
5. Would you like _____ cup of coffee?
6. There is _____ glimmer of hope that Mary will recover from her illness.
7. I don't have _____ pets. I wish I had one.
8. I think _____ black dress is not suitable for you.
9. Jim has made _____ good impression on his new co-workers.
10. It was _____ great honor to receive the reward.
11. Mary claimed that she didn't have _____ unique talents.
12. I don't want _____ more vegetables.
13. _____ people find it difficult to learn a foreign language.
14. There aren't _____ oranges left in the fridge so we decided to go shopping for _____.
15. Dayid doesn't have _____ expectations of his future career.

Bài 4: Hoàn thành câu với những từ cho sẵn.

heads	bowl	glass	kilos	heads
cloves	slice	pitchers	cartoon	cloves

1. My father rarely has a _____ of bread for breakfast.
2. Would you like a _____ of beer?
3. We need to buy some _____ of rice.
4. Jane is making some _____ of lemonade for the party.
5. I asked my mother for another _____ of soup.
6. My grandmother often give me a _____ of home-made cookies every week.
7. Can you help me crush some _____ of garlic?
8. You might need more than a _____ of cherry tomatoes to make salad.
9. Can you go to the supermarket and buy some _____ of cabbage?
10. A _____ of salt is enough. If you put more, the soup will be too salty.

Bài 5: Tìm lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. Have you put some salt in the curry? _____

2. The ingredients of this dish include a spoontable of sugar. _____
3. Would you like any more tea? _____
4. The thief has been arrested by a police. _____
5. I have never watched an horror movie before. _____

6. There aren't some piece of news about the robbery. _____
7. They haven't made a decisions yet. _____
8. My mother has bought some pitchers of sardine. _____
9. You might need a sugar to perfect your dish. _____
10. Do you have any stick of cinnamon here? _____

II ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU TRONG CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LOẠI 1 (MODAL VERBS IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES TYPE 1)

1. Ôn tập câu điều kiện loại 1

Chức năng	Dùng để diễn tả một hành động có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
Cấu trúc	<p>If + S + V(s/es) + (bổ ngữ), S + will + V nguyên mẫu + (bổ ngữ).</p> <p>(Thì Hiện tại đơn) (Thì Tương lai đơn)</p> <p>👤 Mệnh đề If dùng thì hiện tại đơn, mệnh đề chính dùng thì tương lai đơn.</p>
Ví dụ	<p>-If I have enough money, I will buy a new computer. (Nếu tôi có đủ tiền thì tôi sẽ mua một chiếc máy tính mới.) -If you work hard, you will make a lot of money.</p> <p>(Nếu bạn làm việc chăm chỉ thì bạn sẽ kiếm được nhiều tiền.)</p>

2. Động từ khuyết thiếu trong câu điều kiện loại 1

Trong cấu trúc tiêu chuẩn của câu điều kiện loại 1, mệnh đề **if** sử dụng thì Hiện tại đơn và mệnh đề chính sử dụng "**will + V**".

Tuy nhiên, thay vì dùng "**will**", ta cũng có thể dùng các động từ khuyết thiếu khác như **can**, **must**, **may**, **might** hoặc **should** trong mệnh đề chính để diễn đạt khả năng, sự cho phép, lời khuyên, sự cần thiết....

Động từ khuyết thiếu trong câu điều kiện loại 1	Ví dụ
may/might (sự có thể)	<p>If you ask George, he may/might be able to help you.</p> <p>If you drop that glass, it might break.</p>
can/may (sự cho phép)	<p>You can/may leave the room If you've finished the test.</p> <p>If you finish your homework, you can watch TV.</p>
must (sự tuân theo/ cần thiết)	<p>If he doesn't come soon, we must leave without him.</p> <p>You must / have to study hard if you want to pass the exam.</p>
should (lời khuyên)	<p>If you ever go to Chicago, you should take a boat trip on the river.</p> <p>If he calls you, you should go.</p>
can (khả năng)	<p>She can learn to become a good cook if she tries hard.</p> <p>If I have money, I can spend it.</p>

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 6: Nối mệnh đề ở cột A với mệnh đề ở cột B để tạo câu điều kiện loại một.

A	B
1. If you want to be a good cook,	a. you mustn't watch TV or play computer games.
2. Even if Kate begs you to let her cook,	b. you might be in great trouble.
3. If you do not finish your homework,	c. you can catch the bus number 03.
4. If you do not obey your teacher,	d. you may not come to the meeting.
5. If you want to go downtown,	e. you should practice cooking every day.
6. If you are very busy.	f. you shouldn't allow her to do it.
7. If Peter realizes his full potential.	g. he may be more successful in life.
8. If I save enough money by the end of this year,	h. I will definitely go on an excursion with my family.

1- _____ 2- _____ 3- _____ 4 - _____
 5- _____ 6- _____ 7- _____ 8- _____

Bài 7: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- If it (not pour) _____ with rain tomorrow, we can (go) _____ on a picnic.
- If James (start) _____ to cook now, dinner (be) _____ ready in one hour.
- If Jane (not make) _____ it the meeting on time, her manager may (get) _____ very angry.
- If they (be) _____ occupied this weekend, they can (not come) _____ to my house for dinner.
- You must (not leave) _____ the house unless I (allow) _____ you to go.
- Peter (just waste) _____ his money if he (take) _____ a course in this English center.
- If he (be) _____ late, he can (not buy) _____ the tickets.
- Unless she (pay) _____ more attention to the lesson, she (fail) _____ the test.
- It (be) _____ late if you (not start) _____ your work now.
- My mother (not permit) _____ me to go out unless I (promise) _____ her to come back before 10.

Bài 8: Viết câu điều kiện loại 1 với "if" dựa vào các câu cho sẵn.

0. Work harder or you will lose your job.

 If you don't work harder, you will lose your job.

1. Stop telling lies or no one will trust you anymore.

 _____

2. Pay attention to the teacher or you can't understand the lessons.



—

3. Go to bed early or you may be exhausted the next morning.



—

4. Save money from now and you can reward yourself with a long vacation at the end of the year.



—

5. Read more books and you can broaden your knowledge.



—

6. Brush your teeth often in order not to get toothache.



7. Listen carefully or you won't know what to do.



8. Unless you want to get sick, you should eat more healthily.



Bài 9: Sắp xếp các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. even/ I/ me/ if/ will/ to/ never/ apologizes/ forgive/ he/ him.

2. to/You/ may/ have/ early/ you/ if/ leave.

3. specialties/ Thailand/ local/ visit/,/ the/ to/ try/ happen/ should/ you/ you/ If.

4. harder/ your/ you/ work/ in/ can/ you/ achieve/ If/ more/,/ life.

_____ 5.

promotion/ he/ get/ must/ to/ dedication/ show/ wants/ his/ James/ hard/ If/ work/,/ and.

_____ 6.

Will/ time/ you/ afford/ come/ can/ to/ you/ my/ if/ house?

_____ 7.

if/ job/ he/ do/ to/ What/ change/ can/ he/ wants/ his?

8. trouble/ ,/ you/ in/ help/ can/ are/ call/ you/ me/ If/ for.

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Điền a/ an/ some/ any vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

1. We are going to work together for _____ time.
2. Would you like _____ more coffee?
3. I don't have _____ time for myself now.
4. You can't go out without _____ shoes.
5. I hope my teacher will provide me _____ information about the internship this year.
6. I regretted that I didn't take _____ photos of the city I visited last month.
7. I really admire Jim because he has _____ good knowledge of fine art.
8. It seemed like _____ thousand people presented at the city square.
9. Have you got _____ first-hand experiences related to this job?
10. I can see _____ golden fish in the pool. They are darting around.
11. I haven't heard _____ single song of this singer but I have heard a lot of her bad reputation.
12. Have you done _____ research on the matter?
13. I've got hardly _____ money.
14. She asked if we had _____ questions concerning the topic of light pollution.
15. My teacher forbids _____ talking in class.

Bài 11: Hoàn thành câu với một từ định lượng thích hợp.

1. There is not a _____ of pepper left in the cupboard. We need to buy some.
2. Jim has had two _____ of beer and he is getting drunk now.
3. My mother told me to put a _____ of salt into the soup.
4. My friend gave me a _____ of strawberry jam yesterday.
5. Jim came to my house with a _____ of rice wine as a gift.
6. You don't need a _____ of sugar to sweeten your coffee, just a teaspoon is enough.
7. You need half a _____ of flour to make a cake that is big enough for all of us.
8. I don't want any _____ of lettuce in my salad because I hate that.

Bài 12: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. Should I will find a part time job if I have free time? _____
2. If Jane doesn't show up before ten, she can have to be disqualified from the _____ contest.
3. I will hope you will join on us Sunday if you can afford time. _____
4. You should practice a lot if you should want to speak English fluently. _____
5. If you are a teacher, you could be put under a lot of pressure. _____
6. You could go out if you have done the housework. _____
7. Mary often asks me what should she do if she is in trouble. _____

8. If you wish to be a good student, you would spend more time self-studying.

Bài 13: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Jim/ always/ ask/ me/ what/ I/ do/ If/ I/ see/ shooting star.
2. My mother/ often/ add/ stick/ cinnamon/ in/ soup.
3. If/ you/ can/ not/ drink/ black/ coffee/,/ you/ can/ add/ milk/ or/ sugar.
4. How/ the/ cake/ taste/ if/ we/ add/ drop/ olive/ oil?
5. My son/ not/ eat/ salad/ if/ there/ be/ tomatoes/ in/ it.
6. My sister/ often/ eat/ slices/ bread/ with/ strawberry/ jam/ for/ breakfast.
7. Yesterday/ my/ mother/ and/ I/ buy/ some/ tin/ sardine/ and/ vegetables.
8. If/ you/ want/ your/ dish/ look/ better/ you/ garnish/ it/ with/ vegetables.

Bài 14: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

Whenever we think of an English man, we often (1) _____ him with an obsession with tea drinking. Tea has been a huge part of English and British culture up to now. If you want to make tea in the way (2) _____ millions of English do it every day, you (3) _____ consider following these steps. First of all, you need to pick you tea, ideally by going to a tea store and buying (4) _____ good quality brand of tea. Once you get your tea, you have your tea bag ready in a mug while boiling the water. In the next step, you pour boiling water over the teabag and (5) _____ briefly. The tea needs (6) _____ time to develop its flavor so you have to wait 3 to 5 minutes for a pot. After that, you remove the teabag and add (7) _____ milk. If you want to achieve the classic taste of British tea, you (8) _____ use fully sterilized milk. Now it's time to enjoy your tea as an English.

1. A. connect B. link C. associate D. match
2. A. a B. some C. any D. Ø
3. A. must B. might C. have D. would
4. A. a B. some C. any D. Ø
5. A. stir B. whisk C. grate D. chop
6. A. a B. some C. any D. Ø
7. A. a B. some C. any D. Ø
8. A. will B. should C. would D. could

Bài 15: Đọc đoạn văn và trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây.

The government published a report yesterday saying that we need to eat more healthily – more fruits and vegetables, less fat and sugar. So that means fewer burgers, chips and fried food as well as cutting down on sweet things. We went into central London yesterday at lunchtime and asked people what they thought about it. “It’s got nothing to do with the government what I eat,” say Paul Keel, a building worker, as he eats beefburger and chips washed down with strawberry milkshake. “I think I have a healthy diet. You see, I don’t normally eat a beefburger for lunch. Normally I just have chips.” Any fish? “I like cod. But I’ve only ever had it once.” Tim Kennor, a librarian, welcomes the government advice. But he also has his own rules. “I think,” he explains, eating his fried chicken and chips, “it’s important to eat a variety of food.” We then asked Dorothy Matthews, aged 74. “I don’t think it’s the

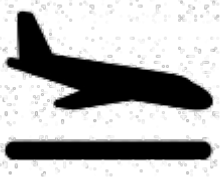
- uigeli.xyzPage 85

UNIT 08

uigeli.xyz

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
accommodation /əˌkɒməˈdeɪʃn/ (n)	chỗ ở		It is hard to find good accommodation during holiday season. Rất khó để tìm chỗ ở tốt trong mùa du lịch.
affordable /əˈfɔːdəbl/ (adj)	có thể chi trả, giá cả phải chăng		This company charges an affordable price for its new product. Công ty này đưa ra giá cả phải chăng cho sản phẩm mới.
cruise /kruːz/ (n)	cuộc đi chơi biển		I hope to go on a cruise around the world. Tôi hi vọng có thể có chuyến đi trên biển vòng quanh thế giới.
destination /ˌdestɪˈneɪʃn/ (n)	điểm đến		What is our next destination? Đâu là điểm đến tiếp theo của chúng ta?
excursion /ɪkˈskɜːʃn/ (n)	chuyến đi ngắn		They will go on an excursion to Hawaii. Họ sẽ đi một chuyến đi ngắn đến Hawaii.
expedition /ˌekspeˈdɪʃn/ (n)	chuyến hành trình		We are planning an expedition to the Amazon forest. Chúng tôi đang lên kế hoạch cho một chuyến hành trình tới rừng Amazon.
make up one's mind /meɪk ʌp wʌnz maɪnd/ (n)	quyết định		Have you made up your mind about your future career? Bạn đã có quyết định cho nghề nghiệp tương lai chưa?

narrow down /'næərəʊ dəʊn/ (n)	cắt giảm xuống		They narrowed down the list to four contestants. Họ đã cắt danh sách xuống còn 4 thí sinh.
resort /rɪ'zɔ:t/ (n)	khu nghỉ dưỡng		It is the most famous mountain resort in Japan. Đây là khu nghỉ dưỡng trên núi nổi tiếng nhất Nhật Bản.
safari /sə'fɑ:ri/ (n)	cuộc đi săn, cuộc hành trình		Jim has just come home from a long safari. Jim vừa mới trở về nhà từ một chuyến hành trình dài.
sightseeing /'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/ (v)	ngắm cảnh		My friend took me on a sightseeing tour of the city. Bạn tôi dẫn tôi đi một chuyến tham quan thành phố.
souvenir /,su:və'niə(r)/ (n)	quà lưu niệm		I bought this bracelet in a souvenir shop in China. Tôi mua chiếc vòng tay này ở một quầy lưu niệm ở Trung Quốc.
touchdown /'tʌtʃdaʊn/ (n)	hạ cánh		The plane had a smooth touchdown. Máy bay đã hạ cánh nhẹ nhàng.
tour guide /tʊə(r) gaɪd/ (n)	hướng dẫn viên du lịch		We rarely hire a tour guide when we go sightseeing. Chúng tôi hiếm khi thuê hướng dẫn viên du lịch khi chúng tôi đi tham quan.

GRAMMAR: CÁCH DÙNG KHÁC CỦA MẠO TỪ (ARTICLES: OTHER USES) | MẠO TỪ KHÔNG XÁC ĐỊNH A/AN

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
-----------	-------

“a/an” dùng trước danh từ đếm được số ít, để chỉ người/vật được đề cập lần đầu, người nghe không biết chính xác hoặc chưa từng biết về người/vật đó.	Isaw a boy in the street. → người nghe chưa biết cụ thể là cậu bé nào, cậu bé chưa được đề cập tới trước đó
“a/an” dùng trước danh từ đếm được số ít, để chỉ người/vật nói chung, có tính khái quát, nêu 1 thành viên bất kỳ của 1 loại.	An owl can see in the dark = Owls can see in the dark. (bất kỳ con cú nào/hầu hết các con cú nói chung đều có thể nhìn trong bóng tối).

II MẠO TỪ XÁC ĐỊNH THE

Mạo từ xác định “the” được dùng cho tất cả các danh từ: danh từ đếm được số ít, danh từ đếm được số nhiều, và danh từ không đếm được. Ví dụ: *The boy, the boys, the food...*

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
“the” được dùng trước danh từ chỉ người/vật đã xác định cụ thể hoặc đã được đề cập tới trước đó - người nghe hiểu người nói về người/vật nào.	- Did you lock the car? (cả người nói, người nghe đều biết về chiếc xe hơi này: xe của bạn/xe của chúng ta).
“the” được dùng để nói đến 1 vật cụ thể, 1 nhóm người/ vật cụ thể.	- The cars in this parking lot belong to people who work here. (những chiếc xe cụ thể trong bãi đỗ này) - The sugar on the table is from Cuba. (Cụ thể là đường ở trên bàn.)
“the” dùng trước danh từ chỉ vật là duy nhất, vật gì đó chỉ có một trong môi trường quanh ta: the earth, the sun, the moon, the world, the equator, the Prime Minister, the capital, the universe, the environment...	- The earth goes around the Sun, and the moon goes around the earth. - Madrid is the capital of Spain.
“the” được dùng để ám chỉ tới thế giới xung quanh ta hoặc những thứ tất cả chúng ta đều đã biết.	- We had a sightseeing tour around the city. (thành phố) - Life would be quieter without the telephone. (máy móc)
“the” đứng trước tên các quốc gia có từ “Republic, State, Kingdom, Union” hoặc tên các quốc gia ở số nhiều.	The United States, the Philippines, the United Kingdom, the Dominican Republic, the Netherlands...

<p>“the” đứng trước tên các đại dương sông ngòi kênh đào, nhóm hồ, quần đảo, dãy núi, biển.</p>	<p>-Đại dương: the Pacific (Ocean), the Atlantic (Ocean), the Indian (Ocean)...</p> <p>-Biển: the Red Sea, the Black Sea, the Baltic...</p> <p>-Sông: the River Nile, the Volga, the Thames, the Amazon...</p>
	<p>-Kênh đào: the Panama Canal...</p> <p>-Nhóm hồ, quần đảo: the Great Lakes, the British Isles...</p> <p>-Dãy núi: the Rocky Mountains, the Himalayas, the Andes, the Alps...</p>

III MẠO TỪ RỎNG/ KHÔNG CÓ MẠO TỪ (ZERO ARTICLE)

<p>Không dùng mạo từ với danh từ đếm được số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được khi nói về những thứ chung chung.</p>	<p>Passwords protect our personal information.</p> <p>Cars have wheels. (xe hơi nói chung)</p> <p>Tigers are in danger of becoming extinct.</p>
<p>Không dùng mạo từ với các bữa ăn, tháng, thứ, mùa, dịp đặc biệt của năm.</p> <p>BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN</p> <p>Bài 1: Điền ‘a’, ‘an’ hoặc Ø vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.</p>	<p>See you on Thursday.</p> <p>I started the course in January.</p> <p>My country is lovely in spring.</p> <p>I visit my grandparents on New Year’s Day.</p>
<p>1. _____ Earth orbits around _____ Sun. Không dùng mạo từ với hầu hết tên người hoặc tên địa điểm (trừ hết tên quốc gia, tiểu bang, vùng lãnh thổ và thị trấn).</p> <p>2. _____ dogs are our best friends.</p> <p>3. _____ most beautiful girl in her class.</p> <p>4. We need to join hands to protect _____ cheetahs from extinction.</p> <p>5. My foreign friend took me on a sightseeing tour around _____ town.</p> <p>6. _____ There are many festivals taking place in _____ spring.</p> <p>7. Communication has never been so convenient before thanks to _____ Internet.</p> <p>8. Last year, a terrible storm reached _____ Philippines.</p> <p>9. Many people mistake Rio de Janeiro for _____ capital of Brazil.</p>	<p>- Lục địa: Africa, Europe, Asia</p> <p>-Quốc gia: France, Japan, New Zealand</p> <p>-Tiểu bang: Texas, Florida, California</p> <p>-Thành phố, thị trấn: New York, Bristol, Cairo</p> <p>-Hồ: Lake Geneva, Lake Michigan</p> <p>-Đảo: Sicily, Bermuda</p> <p>-Núi: Mount Everest</p> <p>-Đồi: North Hill</p>

10. Many people migrate to _____ US in the hope of material success.
11. _____ Japan is my favorite country besides my homeland.
12. Do you have any ideas about _____ British Isles?
13. Yesterday I watched a documentary about _____ River Nile.
14. I know some people who have climb _____ Himalayas.
15. Our family has lived _____ Canada for 5 years.

Bài 2: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

1. Please turn off _____ air-conditioner when you leave _____ room
A. the - the B. a - the C. a - a D. the - a
2. Jim hasn't found _____ place to _____ night.
A. the - the B. a - the C. a - a D. the - a
3. Can you show me _____ way to _____ post office please?
A. the - the B. a - the C. a - a D. the - a
4. Mr. Smith is _____ old customer of my store and he is also _____ man
A. the - the B. a - an C. an - a D. the - a
5. My brother has bought me _____ beautiful dress as a birthday present.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
6. Jim is _____ youngest boy of the family and this year he will go to _____ school.
A. the - Ø B. a - a C. a - the D. the - a
7. There is a huge gap between _____ rich and _____ poor in this country.
A. the - the B. a - an C. a - the D. the - a
8. Peter was in _____ hospital and yesterday we went to _____ hospital to visit him.
A. the - Ø B. the - the C. Ø - the D. the - a
9. My sister told me that she had met her old teacher _____ day before.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
10. Have you ever gone to _____ prison to visit him?
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
11. I didn't think it was _____ expensive restaurant until I checked the menu.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
12. Yesterday my teacher told us _____ story about _____ English writer.
A. the - the B. a - an C. a - the D. the - a
13. Unlike other girls, Mary doesn't like _____ parties and _____ cosmetics.
A. the - the B. the - Ø C. Ø - the D. Ø - Ø
14. Last year I visited _____ village in the Northern part of Vietnam. _____ locals were very friendly.
A. the - the B. a - an C. a - the D. the - Ø

15. Job hunters always seek for people with _____ experience

A. the B. a C. an D. Ø

Bài 3: Điền a/an/ the/Ø vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

1. After having _____ breakfast, we went out for _____ walk in _____ local park.
2. Watch out! Do not sit on _____ bench. It has been painted recently.
3. My father often takes me to _____ cinema on _____ Sunday.
4. Yesterday _____ Prime Minister gave a speech in front of his people.
5. Jim is always staying in _____ bed until lunch time when he doesn't have to go to _____ school.
6. The robber was sent to _____ prison for five years.
7. My brother has got _____ new job and in _____ next few years he will live far from home.
8. Mr. Brown always water his trees in _____ morning.
9. As _____ little boy, I wished to be _____ hero but now I just want to be _____ normal person with _____ decent job.
10. Although I had worked in _____ France for 3 years, I could hardly speak French.
11. In _____ future, I hope I have a chance to visit _____ Red Sea.
12. Jim and his co-workers are planning an expedition to _____ Mount Everest next year.
13. My brother owns _____ cat and _____ dog. Unfortunately, _____ cat seems to hate _____ dog and they never lives in harmony with each other.
14. What has been done so far to protect _____ environment?
15. It never snows in our region at _____ Christmas.

Bài 4: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. Many people think that the lead is the heaviest metal. _____
2. Young people are always open-minded than old. _____
3. The windows are supposed to let in natural light. _____
4. The most of the students in our class comes from Hanoi. _____
5. Do you know that Alps are the most extensive mountain range system? _____
6. Mary doesn't enjoy tea parties and the gossip. _____
7. I have a friend who is studying in Netherlands. _____
8. I think the light bulb is the very important invention of Thomas Edison. _____
9. A relationship between Jim and Jane has turned sour since last year. _____
10. The news came as the shock to me. _____

Bài 5: Dựa vào các từ cho trước, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Friend/ of/ mine/ come/ back/ from/ UK/ after/ long/ vacation.

2. Hundred/ of/ people/ join/ carnival/ in/ Rio de Janeiro/ next/ month.

3. Last year/ I/ go on/ expedition/ to/ North Pole.

4. I/ hope/ I/ can/ visit/ longest/ river/ in/ Europe/ ,/ Volga/ ,/in/future.

5. People/ used/ believe/ that/ Sun/ and/ all / stars/ orbit/ around/ Earth.

6. I/ often/ pay/ visit/ to/ local/ museum/ on/ Sunday.

7. Mary/ take/ care/ of/ all/members/ of/ our team/ since/ we/ set/ off/ for/ London.

8. I/always/ want/ climb/ Mount Everest/ since/ I/ be/ boy.

Bài 6: Điền một mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống nếu cần thiết.

1. My friend is angry with me because I can't remember _____ exact date other birthday.

2. _____ Christmas is one of _____ important holidays in _____ Western countries.

3. _____ Ho Chi Minh City is one of _____ biggest cities in _____ Vietnam.

4. "Are Kate and Dayid _____ siblings. They look alike." "No, they aren't They are _____ cousins".

5. Yesterday _____ fog was so thick that we couldn't see clearly. We followed _____ car in frontof us and hoped that we were going _____ right way.

6. My father has bought me _____ computer.Thanks to it, I can learn many things from_____ Internet. I think _____ computer is one of _____ greatest inventions of all time.

7. _____ Great Lakes, also called _____ Laurentian Great Lakes and _____ Great Lakes of NorthAmerica, are _____ series of interconnected freshwater lakes.

8. _____ Pacific Ocean is _____ largest and deepest of Earth's oceanic divisions. It extends fromArctic Ocean in _____ north to _____ Southern Ocean in _____ south. It is bounded by _____ Asia and _____ Australia in _____ west and _____ US in _____ east.

9. When I was _____ student, I lived with _____ American couple in _____ home stay in Texas. Both _____ host and _____ hostess were friendly and helpful.

10. Last year, Peter paid _____ visit to _____ England on early April. He had the chance to enjoy _____ University Boat Race (between Oxford and Cambridge), which took place on _____ Thames. _____ Thames is _____ historic heartland of rowing in _____ United Kingdom.

Bài 7: Hoàn thành cáccâu sau với các danh từ tho sẵn cùng với mạo từ nếu cần.

resort	excursions	accommodation	souvenir
--------	------------	---------------	----------

sightseeing	destinations	cruise	tour guide
-------------	--------------	--------	------------

1. There are regular weekend _____ throughout the summer.
2. Last summer we spent our vacation in _____ town of Byron Bay. It was a nice place to relaxation and entertainment.
3. We hired _____ to get us across the forest.
4. Would you like to go _____ with me tomorrow?
5. Ha Long Bay is one of _____ most popular holiday _____ in Vietnam.
6. I bought the hand-made carpet as _____ of India.
7. More and more travelers are seeking for _____ with reasonable price so they can afford.
8. I wish I could goon _____ around the world on the most luxury ship.

Bài 8: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

The Indonesian island of (1) _____ Bali is a favorite (2) _____ for both adventurers and those in (3) _____ of a little relaxation. If you like the outdoors, there is certainly no shortage of activities on Bali. The waters off the coast of Bali's white beaches are (4) _____ ideal spot for diving, while (5) _____ dense jungles always call out for exploration. If you prefer going diving, there are over 952 species of sea life and 393 coral species waiting for you to explore. You can scuba-dive or snorkel all around Bali or its baby islands Nusa Lembongan and (6) _____ Nusa Penida. (7) _____ families will also love Bali Zoo or Safari Park, Taro Elephant Park, Bali Bird Park and more. If you are botanists, you should come and see the spectacular collections of orchids and 111 other indigenous plants in the wild jungles. There are (8) _____ huge number of leisure activities that you can enjoy in Bali, sky's the limit.

1. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
2. A. cruise B. expedition C. safari D. destination
3. A. hope B. need C. urgency D. mist
4. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
5. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
6. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
7. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
8. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Bài 9: Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây. Đánh dấu T (True) nếu các câu dưới đây đúng hoặc F (False) nếu các câu dưới đây sai.

Visiting London with children? Here's a guide to some attractions for younger tourists.

The Barbican Centre has its annual children's festival, Summer in the City, on 1-5 August. Each day's timetable is handed out as you enter. It may include magic shows, face painting, hat making and music. One ticket (£4.50 for children, £1 for adults, and no children or adults allowed on their own) buys a full day's activity so you can have a go at everything.

At the South Bank Centre young dancers can join in Sleeping Beauty workshops with the

English National Ballet on 3 August. On 4 August Peter Badejo encourages all comers to join in African dance and there's outdoor dance, theatre and music for all the family on the terraces around the Centre at weekends. For example, on 21 August the Teatro Buendia from Cuba will present a show for children of all ages called An Elephant Takes Too Much Room.

At London Zoo there is a special exhibition about animals which have disappeared as well as animals in danger of disappearing. There are lifesize moving models of dinosaurs, but you can also see living examples of endangered species such as tigers and bird-eating spiders. While you may not want to get too near these, there are plenty of friendly animals in the new Children's Zoo which will be happy to let you get close to them.

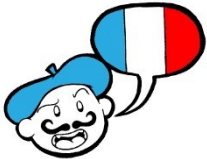
The Tower Hill Pageant is a dark ride museum showing the history of the City of London. Outside, the Town Crier calls visitors to Coin Striking when children can beat out copies of old coins in metal using traditional methods. Musicians and street performers will also be appearing throughout the summer.

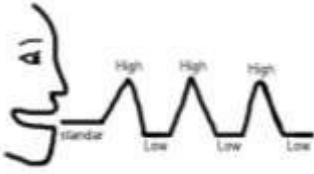
The Museum of the Moving Image is about the cinema, its guides are actors dressed as cowboys and film stars. You can learn about film-making in special classes and there is a special exhibition at eye-level for very young children under one metre tall.

If adults are ready for a rest why not book Sunday lunch at the Russell Hotel? The Jumping Jelly Bean Club offers an exercise class (with qualified instructors) for children while you have a drink. Sit down to lunch together (£14.25 for adults, £3.95 for the children's menu), then while you have your coffee the Jumping Jelly Beaners watch children's films. The Club is held every Sunday lunchtime and it's free to children with families eating in the hotel.

1. The Barbican Centre programme changes from day to day. _____
2. Children can be left at the Barbican Centre for the day. _____
3. At the South Bank Centre there is dance from different parts of the world. _____
4. The Children's Zoo sells soft toy animals. _____
5. At the Tower Hill Pageant visitors can learn about the past. _____
6. Children can learn traditional music with the town crier. _____
7. Visitors to the Museum of the Moving Image can watch actors making a film. _____
8. The museum of the Moving Image is most suitable for older children. _____
9. The Jumping Jelly Bean Club is in a hotel. _____
10. It cost £3.95 to join the Jumping Jelly Bean Club. _____

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
accent /'æksent/ (n)	giọng điệu		Mary has the accent of Northern people. Mary có giọng nói của người miền Bắc.
bilingual /ˌbaɪˈlɪŋɡwəl/ (adj)	sử dụng được hai ngôn ngữ		My manager is bilingual in English and Japan. Quản lý của tôi nói được hai ngôn ngữ là tiếng Anh và tiếng Nhật.
dialect /'daɪəlekt/ (n)	tiếng địa phương		Jim couldn't understand if you spoke dialect. Jim không thể hiểu nếu bạn nói tiếng địa phương.
dominant /'dɒmɪnənt/ (adj)	chi phối chủ đạo		She has a dominant role in her team. Cô ấy có vai trò chủ đạo trong nhóm của cô ấy.
establishment /ɪ'stæblɪʃmənt/ (n)	sự thành lập		They have announced the establishment of the local primary school. Họ vừa mới tuyên bố sự thành lập của trường tiểu học địa phương.
flexibility /ˌfleksəˈbɪləti/ (n)	tính linh hoạt		You should train your body to develop the flexibility. Bạn nên rèn luyện thân thể để phát triển tính linh hoạt.
fluent /'fluːənt/ (adj)	trôi chảy		Most of the students in my class are fluent in English. Hầu hết học sinh trong lớp của tôi đều nói tiếng Anh trôi chảy.

global /'glɒʊbl/ (adj)	toàn cầu		They are going to hold a conference on global warming. Họ sẽ tổ chức một hội thảo về sự ấm lên toàn cầu.
imitate /'ɪmɪteɪt/ (v)	bắt chước		Kids are likely to imitate their parents. Trẻ em thường hay bắt chước bố mẹ chúng.
intonation /ˌɪntəˈneɪʃn/ (n)	ngữ điệu		You rise your intonation at the end of some questions. Bạn nâng giọng lên ở cuối một số câu hỏi.
look up /lʊk ʌp/ (v)	tra cứu		I often look up a word in paperback dictionary. Tôi thường tra cứu từ bằng từ điển giấy.
mother tongue /'mʌðər tʌŋ/ (n)	tiếng mẹ đẻ		Vietnamese is my mother tongue. Tiếng Việt là tiếng mẹ đẻ của tôi.
translate /'trænsˈleɪt/ (v)	dịch		I have my assistant translate some documents for me. Tôi nhờ trợ lý dịch vài văn bản cho tôi.
variety /'vəriəti/ (n)	sự đa dạng, thể loại		American English and Canadian English are two varieties of English. Tiếng Anh Mỹ và tiếng Anh Canada là hai loại của tiếng Anh.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LOẠI 2 (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES TYPE 2)

Chức năng

- Dùng để diễn tả điều kiện không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai, điều kiện chỉ là một giả thiết, một ước muốn trái ngược với thực trạng hiện tại.
- Dùng để đưa ra lời khuyên.

Cấu trúc	<p>If + S + V-ed + (bổ ngữ), S + would + V nguyên mẫu + (bổ ngữ).</p> <p>(Thì Quá khứ đơn)</p> <p> Mệnh đề IF dùng thì quá khứ đơn, mệnh đề chính dùng động từ khuyết thiếu</p>
	"would+ V"
Ví dụ	<p>If I were a bird, I would be very happy.</p> <p>(Nếu tôi là một con chim, tôi sẽ rất hạnh phúc) → tôi không thể là chim được.</p> <p>If I had a million USD, I would buy that car.</p> <p>(Nếu tôi có một triệu đô la, tôi sẽ mua chiếc xe đó.) → hiện tại tôi không cps.</p>
Lưu ý	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Trong câu điều kiện loại 2, ở mệnh đề "IF", với chủ ngữ "I/ he/ she/ It" ta có thể dùng "were" hoặc "was" đều được. (were được dùng trong tình huống trang trọng hơn.) - Ta cũng có thể dùng "could" hoặc "might" trong mệnh đề chính. <p>WOULD = sẽ (dạng quá khứ của WILL)</p> <p>COULD = có thể (dạng quá khứ của CAN)</p> <p>MIGHT = có thể (dạng quá khứ của MAY).</p>

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Nối các câu ở cột A với cột B sao cho phù hợp.

Cột A	Cột B
1. If I had Laura's phone number now,	a. I would think twice before I drop out of school.
2. If it was sunny and hot today,	b. I would forbid smoking everywhere in the state.
3. Mike would invite you to his next party	c. we would take the kid for a swim in the beach.
4. If I had wings,	d. if his parents weren't drug addicts.
5. You would get better grades	e. if you were one of his friends.
6. If I were in your position,	f. I would send her an urgent SMS.
7. We could take photos here	g. I would find a well-paid job easily.
8. If I lived in a developed country,	h. I would fly back home to see my wife and kids.
9. If I were a governor for only a day,	i. if it wasn't forbidden to do so.
10. Mike wouldn't have such family problems.	j. if you worked hard.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

_____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____ 10. _____

Bài 2: Hoàn thành câu điều kiện loại 2 dưới đây.

1. If I _____ (be) you, I would practice more often for the upcoming test.
2. I _____ (spend) a lot of money if I won the lottery.
3. What _____ (you/do) if I gave you one million dollars?
4. If I met Rihanna, I _____ (say) hello.
5. I would take the underground every day, if I _____ (live) in London.
6. You would feel a lot better, if you _____ (not/smoke) so much.
7. If I _____ (be) you, I would follow your mum's advice.
8. I would run away if I _____ (see) a ghost.
9. If I were you, I _____ (accept) the offer.
10. If you _____ (have to) choose a place to live, which one would you choose?
11. What would you do if you _____ (see) a robbery?

Bài 3: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu điều kiện loại 1 và loại 2 dưới đây.

1. If I were you, I (learn) _____ now.
2. If Chuck _____ (ask) us, we would lend him our books.
3. If they _____ (be) at home, they will learn my words.
4. If Jack has a new DVD, he _____ (lend) it to Cindy.
5. If Bill washed the car, he _____ (get) more pocket money.
6. If you _____ (come), you would meet them.
7. If we go to London, we _____ (see) Buckingham Palace.
8. Jenny will help you if she _____ (have) more time.
9. Sandy _____ (tell) him if he asked her.
10. I _____ (wash) my hands if he gives me the soap.
11. If the ghost passes through the door, she _____ (scream).
12. If we _____ (swim) a lot, we would win the competition.
13. The Zongs will travel to the USA if they _____ (win) in the lottery.
14. If you _____ (run), you would catch the bus.
15. If Tessy has enough money, she _____ (buy) some dresses.

II MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSE)

1. Định nghĩa Mệnh đề quan hệ (MĐQH)

Định nghĩa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Mệnh đề quan hệ (Mệnh đề tính từ) là một loại mệnh đề phụ thuộc được bắt đầu bằng các Đại từ quan hệ: <i>who, whom, which, that, whose</i> hay những trạng từ quan hệ: <i>why, where, when</i>. - Mệnh đề quan hệ dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước nó trong mệnh đề chính của câu hay để chỉ rõ người/ vật cụ thể đang được nói đến.
Ví dụ	<p>I told you about the woman who lives next door.</p> <p>(Tôi đã nói với bạn về người phụ nữ sống cạnh nhà.)</p>

2. Các loại Đại từ quan hệ

Đại từ	Cách dùng	Ví dụ
WHO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người đứng trước nó - Làm Chủ ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ (MĐQH). ...N (person) + WHO + V + O - Làm Tân ngữ cho động từ trong MĐQH. ... N (person)+WHO+S +V 	<p>The girl <u>who is standing there</u> is Ann.</p> <p>The student <u>who the head teacher met</u> was John.</p>
WHOM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm tân ngữ cho động từ trong MĐQH. ...N (person) + WHOM + S+ V - Chú ý: "who" có thể thay thế cho "whom", nhưng "whom" KHÔNG THỂ thay thế cho "who". 	<p>Is she the girl <u>whom you are waiting for</u>?</p> <p>Is she the girl <u>whom</u> is waiting for you? → SAI</p> <p>→ Is she the girl <u>who</u> is waiting for you? → ĐÚNG</p>
WHICH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật - Làm Chủ ngữ hoặc Tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ. ...N (thing) + WHICH +V+ O ...N(thing)+WHICH + S + V 	<p>The book <u>which is on the table</u> is mine.</p> <p>The dress <u>which she is wearing</u> is beautiful.</p>
THAT	<p>Có thể thay thế cho vị trí của who, whom, which, That≈Who / Whom / Which</p>	<p>The pen <u>that/which is on the desk</u> is expensive.</p> <p>The dancers <u>that/who/whom he painted</u> were very lively.</p>
WHOSE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Dùng để chỉ sở hữu cho danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật, thường thay cho các tính từ sở hữu: her, his, their,... hoặc hình thức sở hữu cách's. ...N (person, thing) + WHOSE + N + V.... - Chú ý: Whose chỉ đứng giữa hai danh từ. Whose không đứng trước Động từ trong MĐQH. 	<p>The dog <u>whose hair is brown</u> belongs to me.</p>

3. Các loại trạng từ quan hệ

Trạng từ	Cách dùng	Ví dụ
WHY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ chỉ lý do, thường thay cho cụm "for the reason, for that reason". ...N (reason) + WHY + S + V ... 	<p>I don't know the reason. You didn't go to school for that reason.</p> <p>→ I don't know <u>the reason why</u> you didn't on to school.</p>

WHERE	<p>- Thay thế từ chỉ nơi chốn như "place, house, street, town, country..." thường thay cho "there".</p> <p>....N (place) + WHERE + S + V... (WHERE = ON / IN / AT + WHICH)</p>	<p>The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed at that hotel.</p> <p>→ The hotel <u>where we stayed</u> wasn't very clean.</p> <p>= The hotel at which we stayed wasn't very clean./The hotel which we stayed at was very clean.</p>
WHEN	<p>- Thay thế từ chỉ thời gian như "time, moment, day, period, summer..." thường thay cho từ "then".</p> <p>...N (time) + WHEN + S + V... (WHEN = ON / IN / AT + WHICH)</p>	<p>- I don't know the time. She will come back then.</p> <p>→ I don't know the time when she will come back.</p> <p>- Do you still remember the day? We first met on that day.</p> <p>→ Do you still remember the day when we</p>
		<p>first met?</p> <p>- Do you still remember <u>the day on which</u> we first met./ Do you still remember the day which we first met <u>on</u>?</p>

4. Giới từ trong Mệnh đề quan hệ

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Nếu trong Mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ thì giới từ có thể đặt trước hoặc sau mệnh đề quan hệ (chỉ áp dụng với whom và which.)	<p>Mr. Brown is a nice teacher. We studied with him last year.</p> <p>→ Mr. Brown, with whom we studied last year, is a nice teacher.</p> <p>→ Mr. Brown, whom we studied with last year, is a nice teacher.</p>
Nếu Mệnh đề quan hệ bắt đầu bằng đại từ quan hệ "who, that" giới từ buộc phải đặt sau, KHÔNG đặt trước	<p>The playground wasn't used by those children that it was built for. → ĐÚNG</p> <p>The playground wasn't used by those children for that it was built → SAI</p>

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 4: Điền vào chỗ trống "who" hoặc "which".

- A soldier is someone _____ works in the army.
- A student is a person _____ goes to school.
- An ostrich is a bird _____ cannot fly.
- A cook is someone _____ makes meals at a restaurant.
- A tire is a thing _____ you can find on a wheel.
- A stick is a piece of wood _____ is long and thin.

Bài 5: Dùng "that" hoặc "whose" để nối các câu dưới đây.

1. I admired the stuntman. His part was so dangerous.

I admired the stuntman
_____ 2. We ate the cake. It was on
the cupboard.

We ate the cake
_____ 3. She found the bag.
It belonged to her.

She found the bag _____

4. Can you see the car? Its door is scratched.

Can you see the car _____?

5. You are the partner. I want to work with you.

You are the partner
_____ 6. I couldn't help the
students. Their tests were a failure.

I couldn't help the students
_____ 7. This is the guy. I get it from
him.

This is the guy _____

8. I like the house. Its roof was made of red ties.

I like the house _____ 9.

A spade is a tool. You dig with it.

A spade is a tool _____

10. Here is the museum. I told you about it.

Here is the museum _____

11. I can't respect politicians. Their only ambition is to be in power.

I can't respect politicians _____

12. This is the man. We bought the ring from him.

This is the man _____

13. We can't afford new cars. Their price is too high.

We can't afford new cars _____

14. Where is the cassette? We listened to it.

Where is the cassette _____?

15. The film is about a king. His brother kills him.

The film is about a king
_____ 16. I met some people. Their
houses were badly damaged.

I met some people _____

Bài 6: Điền vào chỗ trống các đại từ và trạng từ quan hệ “who, whom, which, whose, where, when” sao cho thích hợp.

1. Can you give me back the money _____ I lent you last month?
2. This is the restaurant _____ we used to eat when we lived in Boston.
3. Mark has sent me an e-mail _____ I haven't replied yet.
4. Who's the person _____ is sitting next to Nancy?
5. They complained about the wrong goods _____ were sent to them.
6. This is Susan _____ husband works in the sales department
7. Candy is wearing a new dress _____ she bought in the summer sales.
8. Monday is the day _____ bills have to be paid.
9. The secretary showed me the filing cabinet _____ important documents are filed.
10. Do you like the boy _____ Mary is talking to?
11. We enjoyed the party _____ Peter and Pam had to celebrate Christmas.
12. Are you the person _____ applied for a job as a receptionist?
13. Is this the pub _____ you meet your friends?
14. You have to delete the sheet _____ is repeated.
15. April is the month _____ we have Easter holiday in Spain.
16. The advice _____ Sam gave me was quite senseless.
17. Have you bought the food _____ I asked you?
18. Phone Mrs Smith _____ you will have to talk to tomorrow.
19. Let's visit the park _____ we played after school.
20. Celebrities receive lots of invitations _____ they don't accept.
21. Did you refuse the offer _____ the company made you?

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 7: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thiện câu điều kiện loại 1 và loại 2.

1. If I _____ (see) John. I _____ (tell) him your news.
2. You _____ (meet) my brother if you _____ (go) to town on Monday.
3. Meg sleeps only 5 hours a day. If she _____ (sleep) longer, her health _____ (improve) fast.
4. If she _____ (want) to talk to me, she _____ (ring up). I guess she doesn't.
5. If you _____ (need) help, my father _____ (help) you.
6. We _____ (have) a picnic if the day _____ (be) fine.
7. I _____ (understand) Mr. Brown if he _____ (speak) slowly.
8. If you _____ (see) a policeman, he _____ (show) you the way.
9. I _____ (finish) the job tomorrow if I _____ (can).
10. If you _____ (give) him good meals, he _____ (not be able) to work hard. He would be too lazy to work then.

11. You _____ (make) a fortune if you _____ (take) my advice. Too bad!
12. I _____ (not need) an umbrella if it _____ (not rain).
13. If she _____ (think) it over carefully, she _____ (form) a clear opinion.
14. If she _____ (catch) a bus now, they _____ (arrive) at half past nine.
15. He _____ (find) the answers if he _____ (look) at the back of the book.
16. If I _____ (think) that about him. I _____ (say) so aloud.
17. If he _____ (promise) to behave in the future, his mum _____ (forgive) him.
18. If you _____ (want) me to, I _____ (come) for a walk with you.
19. If we _____ (can) come on Sunday, we _____ (come). I am really sorry.
20. If you _____ (wait) for a moment, the waiter _____ (bring) you a coffee.
21. He _____ (lose) weight if he _____ (stop) eating so much.
22. Life _____ (be) monotonous if we _____ (have) nothing to do.
23. He _____ (not phone) me here unless it _____ (be) urgent.
24. If they _____ (love) each other, they _____ (not fight) so much.
25. If she _____ (be) patient, I _____ (try) to explain.
26. If he _____ (do) that again, his father _____ (punish) him.
27. If Peter _____ (ask) Marry, I'm sure she _____ (marry) him.
28. She _____ (get) fit if she _____ (walk) every day 3 km.
29. If she _____ (drink) this medicine, she _____ (feel) much better.
30. He _____ (be) very pleased if it _____ (be) really true.

Bài 8: Viết lại các cặp câu dưới đây thành câu có chứa mệnh đề quan hệ.

1. She worked for a man. The man used to be an athlete.

2. They called a lawyer. The lawyer lived nearby.

3. I sent an email to my brother. My brother lives in Australia.

4. The customer liked the waitress. The waitress was very friendly.

5. We broke the computer. The computer belonged to my father.

6. I dropped a glass. The glass was new.

7.
She loves books. The books have happy endings.

8. They live in a city. The city is in the north of England.

_____ 9.

The man is in the garden. The man is wearing a blue jumper.

10. The girl works in a bank. The girl is from India.

11. My sister has three children. My sister lives in Australia.

12. The waiter was rude. The waiter was wearing a blue shirt.

13. The money is in the kitchen. The money belongs to John.

14. The table got broken. The table was my grandmother's.

15. The television was stolen. The television was bought 20 years ago.

16. The fruit is on the table. The fruit isn't fresh.

Bài 9: Chọn từ thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống.

bowl call come dress eat give lived make name peel
play see throw windows

October 31st is Halloween. On this day children in Britain and USA (1) _____ up as witches and ghosts. They also (2) _____ lamps out of pumpkins and put them in the (3) _____. Then they go to the people's doors. They (4) _____ out: "Trick or treat." When people don't (5) _____ them a treat they play a trick on them.

There are also Halloween parties where they (6) _____ games. Such a game is "apples on the string" where people have to (7) _____ apples hanging from a string without using their hands. Another game is "bobbing the apple". There you have to get apples out of a (8) _____ without using your hands. A third game is "fortune telling". Therefore you have to (9) _____ an apple and (10) _____ the long peel over your shoulder. Then look at the peel and try to (11) _____ a letter. This is the first letter of the person's (12) _____ you are going to marry.

Halloween goes back many years when the Celts (13) _____ in England. They thought that at this night the ghosts of the dead (14) _____ back.

Bài 10: Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và trả lời câu hỏi.

East Somalia's prolonged shortage of rain, which has already caused food supplies to fail and brought unemployment in farming areas, could also affect the production of electricity, and

thus reduce the output from the nation's mines. The mining industry, and especially copper mining, uses a huge amount of electricity and is almost completely dependent on the government Electricity Supply Commission. But the Commission has recently asked the mines what would happen if electricity supplies were reduced by ten, twenty or thirty percent.

The Commission's power stations, which produce the electricity using coal as fuel, are mostly situated near the large coalfields of Eastern Province. But this area has little water so the cooling towers at the power stations have to be supplied with water from elsewhere. The problem now is that water levels in all rivers and lakes have fallen dangerously low and, in some cases, are well below the intake pipes which feed into the pipelines which supply the cooling towers.

In a desperate attempt to solve the problem, engineers are spending some forty million dollars on building a series of small dams across the Haro River. It is hoped that these dams will make the water level at the Malawa Dam rise so that water can then be pumped through a new pipeline to the power stations.

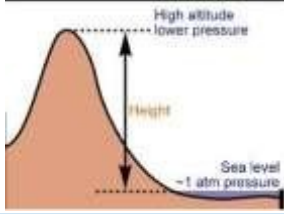
This will take time and It is now the dry season. Very little rain falls before October or November, and, after a shortage which has lasted for four years and is believed to be the worst in two centuries, nobody can say whether the rains will be sufficient.

The amount of electricity and water used by the mines has tended to increase in recent years. The mines, which produce about half the country's export earnings, need electricity in order to pump fresh air through their workings and to drive machines which crush vast quantities of rock. Each mine also has to provide accommodation for as many as three thousand workers.

1. How might West Somalia's Jack of rain affect electricity Supplies and mining?
 - A.Copper mines are having to use less electricity.
 - B. Coal supplies are failing to reach power stations.
 - C.Electricity supplies to mines may be cut by up to thirty percent.
 - D.Copper mines may be unable to pump water by October.
2. Where does the Electricity Supply Commission produce most of its electricity?
 - A. Along the Haro River
 - B. Near the copper mines
 - C.At the Malawa Dam
 - D. In Eastern Province
3. The action that the engineers are taking
 - A.may not help If there is sufficient rain.
 - B.will become effective towards the end of the year.
 - C.should get enough water to the mines.
 - D.will use up a lot of electricity.
4. The engineers aim to
 - A. change the direction of the Haro River.
 - B. keep more water at the Malawa Dam.
 - C.get more water into the Haro River.
 - D. dig out artificial lakes near the dam.
5. Why are the copper mines important to East Somalia?
 - A.They train many skilled mechanics.
 - B.Each mine employs approximately 3,000 people.
 - C.Their costs and production are rising.

D.They bring in fifty percent of what the country earns.

AVOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
altitude /'æltɪtju:d/ (n)	độ cao so với mực nước biển		Only few animals can live in high altitude. Chỉ có một vài động vật có thể sống ở rất cao so với mặt biển.
astronaut /'æstrɒnɔ:t/ (n)	nhà du hành vũ trụ		Neil Armstrong was the first astronaut to walk on the moon. Neil Armstrong là nhà du hành vũ trụ đầu tiên đi trên mặt trăng.
astronomy /ə'strɒnəmi/ (n)	thiên văn học		My brother wants to study astronomy in the future. Anh tôi muốn học thiên văn học trong tương lai.
attach /'dɒmɪnənt/ (adj)	gắn vào		They attached the coupon to the last page of the magazine. Họ đính phiếu giảm giá ở trang cuối cuốn tạp chí.
crew /kru:/ (n)	đoàn, đội		My father is a member of the flight crew. Bố tôi là một thành viên của phi hành đoàn.
habitable /'hæbɪtəbl/ (adj)	có thể sinh sống		Do you think that Mars is habitable? Bạn có nghĩ rằng sao Hỏa là nơi có thể sinh sống được không?
launch /'lɔ:ntʃ/ (v)	phóng, mở, khởi đầu		The first rocket was launched in July 1950. Tên lửa đầu tiên được phóng vào tháng bảy năm 1950.

maintenance /'meɪntənəns/ (n)	sự bảo trì		They closed the store for maintenance. Họ đóng cửa hàng để bảo trì.
meteorite /'mi:tɪəraɪt/ (n)	thiên thạch		Have you ever seen a meteorite? Bạn đã nhìn thấy thiên thạch bao giờ chưa?
once in a blue moon /wʌns ɪn ə mu:n/ (idiom)	rất hiếm khi		Jim reads book about astronomy once in a blue moon. Jim rất hiếm khi đọc sách về thiên văn học.
orbit /'ɔ:bit/ (v)	xoay quanh		There are many space stations orbiting around the moon. Có rất nhiều trạm không gian xoay xung quanh mặt trăng.
over the moon /'əʊvə(r) ðə mu:n/ (idiom)	rất vui vẻ		Last night my friends and I were over the moon. Đêm qua bạn tôi và tôi đã rất vui vẻ.
rocket /'rɒkɪt/ (n)	tên lửa		I wish to be a rocket scientist one day. Tôi ước trở thành một nhà khoa học về tên lửa một ngày nào đó.
satellite /'sætəlaɪt/ (n)	vệ tinh		The national channel broadcast the soccer match via satellite. Kênh truyền hình quốc gia phát sóng trận bóng đá thông qua vệ tinh.
weightless /'weɪtləs/ (n)	trọng không lượng		I have experienced the weightless condition. Tôi đã từng trải nghiệm trạng thái không trọng lượng.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN VÀ THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH (PAST SIMPLE AND PAST PERFECT)

1. Thì Quá khứ đơn

a. Cách dùng

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Diễn tả hành động hay sự việc đã xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.	I met her last summer. (Tôi đã gặp cô ấy vào mùa hè năm ngoái.)
Diễn tả hành động thường làm hay quen làm trong quá khứ.	She often went swimming every day last year. (Năm ngoái mỗi ngày cô ấy thường đi bơi.)

b. Cấu trúc của thì quá khứ đơn

> Với động từ "to be" (was/ were)

Thể khẳng định			Thể phủ định		
I/ He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít	was	+ danh từ/ tính từ	I/ He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít	was not/ wasn't	+ danh từ/ tính từ
You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	were		You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	were not/ weren't	
Ví dụ: -He was tired. (Anh ấy đã rất mệt.) -They were in the room. (Họ đã ở trong phòng.)			Ví dụ: - He wasn't at school yesterday. (Hôm qua anh ấy đã không ở trường.) -They weren't in the park.(Họ đã không ở trong công viên.)		

Thể nghi vấn			Câu trả lời ngắn		
Was	I/ He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít	+ danh từ/ tính từ	Yes,	I/ He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít	was
			No,		wasn't
Were	You/ We/ They/		Yes,	You/ We/ They/	were
	Danh từ số nhiều		No,	Danh từ số nhiều	weren't

Ví dụ:

- Were they tired yesterday? (Hôm qua họ đã mệt phải không?) Yes, they were./No, they weren't.
- Was he at home? (Anh ấy đã ở nhà phải không?) Yes, he was./ No, he wasn't.

- Lưu ý: Khi chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi là "you" (bạn) thì câu trả lời phải dùng "I" (tôi) để đáp lại.

> Với động từ thường (Verb/V)

Thể khẳng định		Thể phủ định		
I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ V_ed	I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ did not/ didn't	+ V nguyên mẫu
He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít		He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít		
Ví dụ: -She went to school yesterday.(Hôm qua cô ấy đã đi học.) - He worked in this bank last year. (Năm ngoái anh ấy đã làm việc ở ngân hàng này.)		Ví dụ: - My mother didn't buy me a new computer last year. (Năm ngoái mẹ tôi đã không mua cho tôi một chiếc máy tính mới.) -Hedidn't meet me last night. (Anh ta đã không tới gặp tôi tối qua.) -Mr Nam didn't watch TV with me. (Ông Nam đã không xem TV với tôi)		

Thể nghi vấn			Câu trả lời ngắn		
Did	I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ V nguyên mẫu	Yes,	I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	did
	He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít		No,	He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít	didn't

Ví dụ:

Did she work there? (Có phải cô ấy làm việc ở đó không?) Yes,
she did./ No, she didn't.

Did you go to Hanoi last month? (Có phải bạn đã đi Hà Nội tháng trước không?) Yes,
I did./ No, I didn't.

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Trong câu ở thì hiện tại đơn thường có sự xuất hiện của các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như:

-yesterday(hôm qua)

-last night/week/month/...(Tối qua/tuần trước/tháng trước..)

-ago (cách đây), (two hours ago:cách đây 2 giờ/two weeks ago:cách đây 2 ngày...)

-in + thời gian trong quá khứ(e.g: in 1990)

-when: khi (trong câu kể)

2. Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành

Cấu trúc	<p>(+) S + had + V_{PII} (past participle).</p> <p>(-) S + had not/ hadn't + V_{PII}.</p> <p>(?) Had + S + V_{PII}?</p> <p>→ Yes, S + had./ No, S + hadn't.</p>
Ví dụ	<p>(+) I had left when they came. (Khi họ đến thì tôi đã rời đi rồi.)</p> <p>(-) I hadn't left when they came. (Khi họ đến thì tôi đã không rời đi.)</p> <p>(?) Had you left when they came? (Khi họ đến, bạn đã rời đi rồi à?)</p> <p>Had you not left when they came? (Khi họ đến, bạn đã không rời đi à?)</p> <p>Hadn't you left when they came? (Khi họ đến, bạn đã không rời đi à?)</p>
Cách dùng	<p>-Diễn tả một hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.</p> <p>Ví dụ: He had left the house before she came.</p> <p>-Diễn ra một hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.</p> <p>Ví dụ: We had had lunch by two o'clock yesterday.</p> <p>By the age of 25, he had written two famous novels.</p>
Dấu hiệu nhận biết	<p>by + thời gian trong quá khứ before, after, when,</p> <p>by the time, as soon as, as....</p>

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì Quá khứ đơn hoặc Quá khứ hoàn thành.

1. She (feel) _____ sick after she (eat) _____ a whole box of chocolates.
2. After the doctor (examine) _____ the child he (have) _____ a talk with the mother.
3. When I (call) _____ on my friend, he (go) _____ out.
4. Mary (finish) _____ her homework when her father (come) _____ home from his office.
5. I (throw) _____ away the newspaper after I (read) _____ it.
6. After she (spend) _____ all her money she (ask) _____ her father to help her.
7. The teacher (give) _____ back the exercise books after he (correct) _____ them.
8. The sun (rise) _____ when the farmer (start) _____ work.

Bài 3: Điền T (True) nếu mỗi câu sau đúng, hoặc F (False) nếu câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. I have been in Mexico during the summer of 1970.
2. Mary had prepared dinner when I arrived, so we were able to eat immediately.
3. Three years ago he had been a student at a university in California.
4. We have collected stamps for many years.
5. We took the bus downtown, did a few errands, and had gone to lunch.

6. Since he bought a new car, he has been driving to work every day.
7. Last night they have recognized us from the party we went to earlier in the week.
8. Since Ted graduated, he has been working with his father.
9. The doctor had seen ten patients since eight o'clock this morning.
10. He is studying English for the last five years.

II MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ XÁC ĐỊNH (DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES)

1. Thì Quá khứ đơn

a. Cách dùng

Định nghĩa và cách dùng	Ví dụ
<p>- Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định là mệnh đề được dùng để xác định danh từ đứng trước nó, có nhiệm vụ cung cấp thông tin cần thiết về người/vật đang được nhắc đến.</p> <p>- Mệnh đề xác định là mệnh đề cần thiết cho ý nghĩa của câu, không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.</p> <p>- Nó được sử dụng khi danh từ là danh từ không xác định và KHÔNG DÙNG DẤU PHẨY ngăn cách nó với mệnh đề chính.</p>	<p>- Mệnh đề quan hệ được dùng để chỉ rõ một chủ ngữ: <u>People who park illegally</u> are fined. (Những người đỗ xe bất hợp pháp sẽ bị phạt.)</p> <p>- Mệnh đề quan hệ được dùng để chỉ rõ một tân ngữ: <u>The rock that they found last week</u> may have landed on Earth from the moon. (Hòn đá mà họ đã tìm thấy tuần trước có thể đã rơi xuống Trái đất từ trên Mặt Trăng.)</p>
<p>Nếu danh từ và cụm danh từ là tân ngữ của động từ thì ta có thể lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ.</p>	<p><u>The rock that they found last week</u> may have landed on Earth from the moon. → The rock <u>they found last week</u> may have landed on Earth from the moon.</p>

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây, điền đại từ quan hệ thích hợp vào chỗ trống who / whom / whose / where / which.

1. What's the name of the man _____ car you borrowed?
2. A cemetery is a place _____ people are buried.
3. A pacifist is a person _____ believes that all wars are wrong. A. An orphan is a child _____ parents are dead.
5. The place _____ we spent our holidays was really beautiful.
6. This school is only for children _____ first language is not English.
7. I don't know the name of the woman to _____ I spoke on the phone.
8. The man _____ is wearing glasses is a pop singer.
9. The window _____ was broken by the naughty boy will have to be repaired.
10. Mrs. Jackson, _____ we met in the supermarket yesterday, is my music teacher.
11. Rome is the city _____ he lived for ten years.

12. That was the day on _____ I first met Ann.
13. The girl, the brothers of _____ study in our school, looks very nice.
14. His new car _____ cost him a fortune, was really stunning.
15. I met the old lady _____ you were very kind to.
16. That's the book about _____ I've heard so much.

Bài 4: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây, thay đổi đại từ quan hệ sao cho thích hợp.

* <u>they didn't show up</u>	* <u>Richard brought her to dinner</u>
* <u>we saw him coming out of our neighbour's flat last night</u>	* <u>the police took him to prison last week.</u>
* <u>the Tour Guide Magazine recommended it</u>	* <u>his car broke down</u>
* <u>she's just finished her second cooking book</u>	* <u>we exchanged them during our chat</u> *
* <u>who got injured at the swimmingpool</u>	<u>everybody was talking about her.</u>
* <u>where I studied as a girl</u>	* <u>who organised our Drama Club</u>

1. We stayed at the hotel _____
2. A few people we invited to our party _____
3. The pickpocket _____ has just been released.
4. Paul didn't seem to like the man _____
5. I _____ enjoyed _____ talking _____ to _____ the _____ old _____ lady _____
6. The recipes _____ will probably appear in her next book.
7. Everybody _____ at _____ the _____ party _____ tried _____ to _____ help _____ the _____ young _____ lady _____
8. The man _____
9. What was the name of the actor _____
10. _____ Who's _____ the _____ actress _____ ?
11. The teacher _____ is leaving for Germany next week.
12. The school _____ has been renovated.

Bài 5: Viết lại các câu dưới đây để tạo thành câu có chứa mệnh đề quan hệ xác định.

1. Pass me the dictionary. I put it on the shelf.

2. Will you help me to do the exercises? I don't understand the exercises.

3. We _____

haven't met Mr Smith yet. His daughter studies with Paul.

_____ 4. We
won't forget the day. We went to Justin Beater's concert that day.

_____ 5. Peter has read the book. I recommended the book to him.

_____ 6. They sent me a
postcard of the hotel. They stayed there on holiday.

_____ 7. This is my best friend. I met her at school ten years ago.

_____ 8. Is this the man? This man accused you of stealing his wallet.

_____ 9. Peter made a lemon cake. It is his speciality.

_____ 10. I want you to introduce you to Mrs Black. Her husband is an engineer.

_____ 11. Can you show
me the room? Meetings are held in that room.

_____ 12. I don't know the man. Sue is dancing with him.

_____ 13. We last saw Mary on Christmas Day. She came to our party then.

_____ 14. You have to correct the mistakes. You've made mistakes in the letter.

_____ 15. I like Mrs White. She is in charge of the Marketing Department.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn vào phương án đúng.

1. Everything is going well. We didn't have/haven't had any problems so far.
2. Margaret didn't go/hasn't gone to work yesterday.
3. Look! That man over there wears / iswearing the same sweater as you.
4. Your son is much taller than when I last saw him. He grew / has grown a lot.
5. I still don't know what to do. I didn't decide / haven'tdecided yet.
6. I wonder why Jim is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that

7. Jane had a book open in front of her but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
8. I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.
9. Mary wasn't happy in her new job at first but she begins/ is beginning to enjoy it now.
10. After leaving School, Tim found/has found it very difficult to get a job.
11. When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
12. This is a nice restaurant, isn't it? Is this the first time you are/you've been here?
13. I need a new job. I'm doing /I've been doing the same job for too long.
14. Ann has gone out. — oh, has she? What time didshe go / has she gone?
15. You look tired. — Yes, I've played /I've been playing basketball.
16. Where are youcoming/do you come from? Are you American?
17. I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her /that I didn't see her.
18. Bob and Alice have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

Bài 7: Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và trả lời câu hỏi.

England's highest main-line railway station hangs on to life by a thread Deserted and unmanned since it was officially closed in 1970, Dent, situated high in the hills of Yorkshire wakes up on six summer weekends each year, when a special charter train unloads walkers, sightseers and people who simply want to catch a train from the highest station to its platforms.

But even this limited existence may soon be brought to an end. Dent station situated on the Settle to Carlisle railway line, is said to be the most scenic in the country. But no amount of scenic beauty can save the line from the British Rail's cash problems.

This year, for the sake of economy, the express trains which used to pass through Dent station have been put to another route.

It is now an open secret that British Rail sees no future for this railway line. Most of its trains disappeared some time ago. Bridge, built on a grand scale a century ago, is falling down. It is not alone. Half a dozen railway routes in the North of England are facing a similar threat. The problem is a worn out system and an almost total lack of cash to repair it. Bridges and tunnels are showing their ages, the wooden supports for the tracks are rotting and engines and coaches are getting old.

On major lines between large cities, the problem is not too bad. There lines still make a profit and cash can be found to maintain them. But on the country branch line, the story is different. As track wears out, it is not replaced. Instead speed limits are introduced, making the journey longer than necessary and discouraging customers.

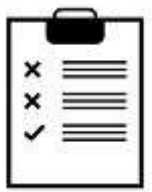
If a bridge is dangerous, there is often only one thing for British Rail to do: go out and find money from another source. This is exactly what it did a few months ago when a bridge at Bridling station was threatening to fall down. Repairs were estimated at 200,000 pounds just for one bridge and British Rail was delighted, and rather surprised when two local councils offered half that amount between them.

1. Since 1970 Dent station has been used

A. only for a part of each year.	B. only in some years.
C. only by local people.	D. only by hill walkers.

2. Of all the railway routes in British the one which passes through Dent
 - A.is the most historic
 - B.passes through the most attractive countryside
 - C.is the most expensive number of tourists
 - D.carries the greatest number of tourists.
3. The most urgent problem for many country railway lines is that of
 - A.rebuilding bridge.
 - B.repairing engines.
 - C. renewing coaches.
 - D.repairing station.
4. The people most affected by the difficulties Facing the British Rail would appear to be
 - A.businessmen.
 - B.organized groups.
 - C.occasional and local traveler's
 - D.holiday-makers.
5. In order to improve the financial situation of the country railway lines, British Rail should
 - A.introduce speed limits
 - B. reduce seal e of maintenance
 - C.increase fares
 - D.appeal to local councils

VOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
advantageous /ˌædvən'teɪdʒəs/ (adj)	có lợi		This English course will be advantageous to your future job. <i>Khóa học tiếng Anh này sẽ có lợi cho công việc tương lai của bạn.</i>
burden /'bɜːdn/ (n)	gánh nặng		Mr. Smith rarely shares his burdens to his wife. <i>Ông Smith hiếm khi chia sẻ những gánh nặng của mình với vợ.</i>
consequently /'kɒnsɪkwəntli/ (adv)	hậu quả là		She spent all her money, and consequently she had to borrow some. <i>Cô ấy đã tiêu hết tiền, hậu quả là cô ấy phải đi vay.</i>
content /'kɒntənt/ (adj)	hạnh phúc		I'm perfectly content to hang out with friends. <i>Tôi rất hạnh phúc khi đi chơi với bạn bè.</i>
evaluate /ɪ'veljueɪt/ (v)	đánh giá		It is very difficult to evaluate the success of your plan. <i>Rất khó để đánh giá thành công của kế hoạch của chúng bạn.</i>
facilitator /fə'sɪlɪteɪtə(r)/ (n)	người điều phối		The teacher acts as a facilitator in modern classrooms. <i>Giáo viên đóng vai trò là một người điều phối trong lớp học hiện đại.</i>
financial /faɪ'nænʃl/ (adj)	về tài chính		Our family was in financial difficulties years ago. <i>Gia đình của chúng tôi đã gặp những khó khăn về tài chính nhiều năm trước.</i>

hands-on /hændz 'ɒn/ (adj)	trực tiếp		Have you got any hands-on experience in working with kids? Bạn đã từng có những kinh nghiệm thực tiễn nào trong việc làm việc với trẻ con chưa?
responsive /'mi:tɪərɪt/ (adj)	phản ứng nhanh nhạy		Companies should be responsive to customers' demand. Các công ty nên có phản ứng nhanh nhạy với yêu cầu của khách hàng.
sector /'sektə(r)/ (n)	mảng, lĩnh vực		More and more people want to get a service-sector job. Ngày càng nhiều người muốn có công việc trong ngành dịch vụ.
sole /səʊl/ (adj)	duy nhất		Weather is their sole topic of speaking. Thời tiết là chủ đề nói chuyện duy nhất của họ.
tailor /'teɪlə(r)/ (v)	biến đổi theo nhu cầu		These services are tailored to the need of customers. Những dịch vụ này được điều chỉnh theo nhu cầu của khách hàng.
witness /'wɪtnəs/ (v)	chứng kiến		We are witnessing a rapid change in our society. Chúng ta đang chứng kiến những sự thay đổi nhanh chóng trong xã hội.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG THÌ TƯƠNG LAI (FUTURE PASSIVE)

Thì	Cấu trúc câu chủ động	Cấu trúc câu bị động
Tương lai đơn	S + will + V-inf The government will pass the new law next month.	S + will be + V_{PI} The new law will be passed by the government next month.
Tương lai tiếp diễn	S + will be V-ing She will be singing a song when the prime minister comes in.	S + will be being + V_{PI} A song will be being sung when the prime minister comes in.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Viết các câu dưới đây thành câu bị động.

- Jane will buy a new computer.

2. Her boyfriend will install it.

3. Millions of people will visit the museum.

4. Our boss will sign the contract.

5. You will not do it.

6. They will not show the new film.

7. He won't see Sue.

8. They will not ask him.

9. Will the company employ a new worker?

10. Will the plumber repair the shower?

Bài 2: Dựa vào từ cho sẵn, viết các câu dưới đây thành câu bị động ở thì tương lai đơn.

1. the exhibition /visit _____
2. the windows/clean _____
3. the message/read _____
4. the thief/arrest _____
5. the photo/take _____
6. these songs /sing _____
7. the sign/see/not _____
8. a dictionary/use/not _____
9. credit cards/accept/not _____
10. the ring/find/not _____

II MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ KHÔNG XÁC ĐỊNH (NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES)

1. Định nghĩa và cách dùng Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định

Định nghĩa và cách dùng	Ví dụ
-------------------------	-------

<p>-Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định là mệnh đề cung cấp thêm thông tin về một người, một vật hoặc một sự việc đã được xác định.</p> <p>-Mệnh đề không xác định là mệnh đề không nhất thiết phải có trong câu, không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa.</p> <p>- Nó được sử dụng khi danh từ là danh từ xác định và được ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng một hoặc hai dấu phẩy (,).</p>	<p>Dalat,<u>which I visited last summer</u>, is very beautiful.</p> <p>(“Dalat”là danh từ xác định, “which I visited last summer”là MĐQH không xác định.)</p>
<p>Ta dùng Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định khi:</p> <p>-Khi danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là một danh từ riêng (Tên riêng của người, địa danh, v...v...)</p> <p>-Khi danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là một tính từ sở hữu (my, his, her, their)</p> <p>-Khi danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là một danh từ đi với this, that these, those</p>	<p>- The Jeffersons, <u>who own a Jaguar</u>, live next door.</p> <p>- My cat, <u>which I found on the street</u>, is called Monty.</p> <p>- This ring, <u>which was a present from my husband</u>, is very valuable.</p>

2. Phân biệt MĐQH xác định và không xác định

Mệnh đề quan hệ Xác định	Mệnh đề quan hệ Không xác định
Không có dấu phẩy “,” ngăn cách MĐQH với mệnh đề chính của câu.	Có 1 hoặc 2 dấu phẩy “,” ngăn cách MĐQH với mệnh đề chính của câu.
“who, whom, which, that” là tân ngữ có thể lược bỏ.	“who, whom, which, that” là tân ngữ KHÔNG thể lược bỏ.
Được sử dụng Đại từ quan hệ “that”	KHÔNG được sử dụng Đại từ quan hệ “that”
Không thể bỏ đi được.	Có thể bỏ đi được.

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây, sử dụng đại từ “who” hoặc “which”

- Robert’s parents, _____ are retired now, live in Spain.
- Sydney _____ has a population of more than 3 million, is Australian’s largest city.
- Peter’s sister, _____ goes to school with me, is a very nice person.
- My uncle John, _____ lives in London, is coming to visit me next week.
- saw the film ‘Casablanca’, _____ won an Oscar in 1942.

Bài 4: Sử dụng đại từ quan hệ viết các câu có chứa mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định.

- Al Gore gave a long and boring speech. He won the Nobel Prize.

- Starbucks wants to open new stores in China. It does business all over the world.

- Social network sites will definitely change business. They are very popular.

4. Scientists are working with stem cells. Stem cells will revolutionize medicine.

5. Last week, Jim Taylor interviewed Sally Thomson. She is my neighbour.

6. Mr Brown has been invited to join our club. He enjoys going to the theatre.

7.

Whiting House is an important local monument. It was built in 1856.

8.

Bono signed autographs at Tower Records yesterday. He's a famous musician.

9. John F. Kennedy was assassinated in 1963. He was president of the USA.

10. The Queen will open a new hospital. It is in Jarvis street.

Bài 5: Khoanh tròn vào phương án đúng.

1. Alexander Fleming, _____ received the Nobel Prize in 1945.
A. who discovered penicillin C. he discovered penicillin
B. which discovered penicillin D. that discovered penicillin
2. John James Audubon, who was a naturalist and an artist, wrote great work _____ called "Birds of America"
A. which it is B. which is C. whom is D. is
3. Immigrants _____ after 1860 settled mainly in large cities.
A. which came to America C. came to America
B. they came to America D. who came to America
4. Hawaii, which is a part of a group of islands, _____ active volcanoes.
A. that has B. which has C. has D. who has
5. In the ear, just above the cochlea, there are three small semicircular canals _____ as an organ of balance.
A. that function together C. are functioning together
B. function together D. they function together
6. Amsterdam, Holland, which is sometimes called Venice of Northern Europe _____.
A. which has many canals C. with many canals
B. it has many canals D. has many canals

7. The Egyptians constructed walls and embankments_____ marvels even today.
 A. they are considered C. are considered
 B. which are considered D.who are considered
8. Ernest Hemingway, a novelist and short-story writer, developed a prose style _____.
 A.who influenced an entire generation of authors
 B. influenced an entire generation of authors
 C.that influenced an entire generation of authors
 D.has influenced an entire generation of authors

Bài 6: Viết lại các câu dưới đây theo 2 cách có chứa mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining) và không xác định (Non-defining).

1. Peter Pan will visit my aunt this Sunday. Peter Pan was my classmate.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____
2. Kenny is in my class. Kenny is the lovely boy.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____
3. Mary is arguing with Peggy. Peggy is the horrible person.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____ 4.
- I will going shopping with Anna. Anna is the hardworking person.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____ 5.
- Our school was found in 1997. Our school is Pig's College.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____ 6.
- Our principal will come to visit us this Monday. Our principal is called Mr. Brown.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____ 7.
- Jenny is going to present something about pandas. Pandas are the rare species.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____ 8.
- Alex is shopping in the supermarket. Alex is the Chief Director of a company.
 Defining: _____
 Non-defining: _____
10. The World Trade Centre has been collapsed. The World Trade Centre is the landmark of America.
 Defining: _____

Non-defining: _____

11. Mary is shopping in Sogo. Sogo is the greatest shopping mall.

Defining: _____

Non-defining: _____

12. I like playing computer games. I am one of the intelligent persons.

Defining: _____

Non-defining: _____

Bài 7: Điền T (True) nếu các câu dưới đây đúng, điền F (False) nếu các câu dưới đây sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. I like novels who deal with philosophical questions. _____
2. The company did not want to hire a man that his experience was so limited. _____
3. The family whose house burned down was on television. _____
4. She wore a dress what everyone considered extravagant. _____
5. Where can one catch the train, which goes to Flower Square? _____
6. The ship that we boarded in Rio was bound for Marseilles. _____
7. John did not want to do business with a man which had been in prison. _____
8. Take your car back to the man who sold it to you. _____
9. That is the baby which has been in the incubator for three months. _____
10. The woman that her photograph was in the paper is making a speech at the town hall tonight. _____

Bài 8: Đọc đoạn văn và trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây.

The Difference Between Men And Women

Although there is a great deal of variation within each gender, on the average men and women discuss a surprisingly different range of topics. According to some studies, women and men ranging in age from seventeen to eighty described the range of topics each discussed with friends of the same sex. Certain topics were common to both men and women: work, movies, and television proved to be frequent topics for both groups. The differences between men and women were more striking than the similarities. Female friends spent much more time discussing personal and domestic subjects, relationship problems, family, health and reproductive matters, weight, food and clothing. Men, on the other hand, were more likely to discuss music, current events, sports and business. Women were more likely to gossip about close friends and family. By contrast, men spent more time gossiping about sports figures and media personalities. These differences can lead to frustration when men and women try to converse with one another.

1. It is stated in the passage that women _____.
 - A. are unwilling to discuss personal subjects
 - B. are more interested in discussing relationship problems than men
 - C. never talk about other men and women
 - D. don't like gossiping about anything

- E. discuss more important issues than men
2. According to the passage, men _____.
- A. need to learn to communicate better
- B. like talking about movies and television as much as women do
- C. are not likely to gossip on anything
- D. have no common topics with women
- E. get frustrated more whenever they try to converse with women
3. The passage mainly discusses _____.
- A. what women's conversational topics are

UNIT 12

- B. why men don't like conversing with women
- C. the topics men like discussing
- D. why women talk more than men
- E. the conversational topics of men and women

AVOCABULARY

New words	Meaning	Picture	Example
architect /'ɑ:kitekt/ (n)	kiến trúc sư		Renzo Piano is a famous Italian architect. <i>Renzo Piano là một kiến trúc sư người Ý nổi tiếng.</i>
burn the midnight oil /bɜ:n ðə 'mɪdnɑɪl/ (idiom)	làm việc chăm chỉ		James burnt the midnight oil to finish his project. <i>James phải làm việc chăm chỉ để hoàn thành dự án của anh ấy.</i>
certificate /sə'tɪfɪkət/ (n)	chứng nhận		They have got their marriage certificate. <i>Họ vừa mới lấy chứng nhận kết hôn.</i>
dynamic /daɪ'næmɪk/ (adj)	năng nổ		Jim is the most dynamic person that I know. <i>Jim là người năng nổ nhất mà tôi biết.</i>

event planner /i'vent 'plænə(r)/ (n)	người lập kế hoạch sự kiện		He is a well-known event planner. Anh ấy là một người lập kế hoạch sự kiện có tiếng.
housekeeper /'haʊski:pə(r)/ (n)	nội trợ		My mother is not just a housekeeper. Mẹ tôi không chỉ là một người nội trợ.
lodging manager /'lɒdʒɪŋ 'mæniɪdʒə(r)/	người phân phòng		Jane is the lodging manager in a local hotel. Jane là người phân phòng của một khách sạn địa phương.
make a bundle /meɪk ə 'bʌndl/ (idiom)	kiếm tiền		Peter makes a bundle with his current job. Peter kiếm bộn tiền từ công việc hiện tại của anh ấy.
mechanic /mə'kænik/ (n)	thợ máy		They seem to hire the most skillful mechanics in the city. Họ có vẻ như đã thuê những người thợ tài giỏi nhất thành phố.
pharmacist /'fɑ:məsɪst/ (n)	dược sĩ		Her prescription was made up by a local pharmacist. Đơn thuốc của cô ấy được kê bởi một dược sĩ ở địa phương.
profession /prə'feɪn/ (n)	nghề nghiệp, ngành nghề		I decided to enter teaching profession. Tôi quyết định vào nghề giáo viên.
receptionist /rɪ 'sepʃənɪst/ (n)	nhân viên tiếp thị		You can ask the receptionist for further information. Bạn có thể hỏi nhân viên tiếp tân nhiều thông tin hơn.

take into account /teɪk 'ɪntə ə 'kaʊnt/	cân nhắc		Her idea is taken into account. Ý tưởng của cô ấy được cân nhắc.
vocational /vəʊ'keɪʃənəl/ (adj)	hướng nghiệp		Peter decided to enter a vocational school after high school. Peter quyết định học một trường dạy nghề sau khi học trung học.

GRAMMAR | ÔN TẬP DESPITE/ IN SPITE OF

1. Cách dùng

Cách dùng	- “In spite of” và “Despite” (Mặc dù) là hai giới từ thể hiện sự tương phản. - Đứng đằng sau có thể là một danh từ (Noun), cụm danh từ (Noun phrase), hoặc động từ dạng V-ing. - Có cách sử dụng đối ngược với cụm “Because of”
Cấu trúc	• In spite of: In spite of + N/NP/V-ing, S + V S + V + in spite of + N/ NP/V-ing • Despite: Despite + N/ NP/V-ing, S + V S + V + despite + N/ NP/ V-ing
Ví dụ	<u>In spite of being warned</u> many times, those kids want to swim in that river. (Mặc dù đã được cảnh báo nhiều lần, nhưng những đứa trẻ kia muốn bơi ở dòng sông kia.) Those kids want to swim in that river <u>in spite of being warned</u> many times. (Những đứa trẻ kia muốn bơi ở dòng sông mặc dù đã được cảnh báo nhiều lần.) Julie loved Tom <u>despite his football obsession</u> . (Julie yêu Tom mặc dù nổi ám ảnh bóng đá của anh ấy.) <u>Despite this rain</u> , I want to go for a run. (Mặc dù trời mưa, nhưng tôi muốn đi chạy.)
Lưu ý	Mặc dù cùng mang ý nghĩa là “Mặc dù” nhưng cấu trúc của giới từ “In spite of” và “Despite” khác với cấu trúc của liên từ “Although/ Even though”. Although/ Even though + S + V, S + V. S + V although/ even though + S + V.

Cách chuyển đổi từ mệnh đề thành danh từ/ cụm danh từ.

Từ một mệnh đề trạng ngữ có sử dụng liên từ, ta có thể chuyển đổi câu thành câu có chứa giới từ + danh từ/ cụm danh từ.

ADVERB CLAUSE	=	PREPOSITION + NOUN/ NOUN PHRASE/ V-ING
<u>Although it was cold</u>	=	<u>despite the cold</u>
S V (noun)		(noun)
<u>Because it was very noisy</u>	=	<u>despite the noise</u>
S V (adj)		(noun)
<u>Even though was late</u>	=	<u>In spite of being late</u>
S V		(gerund)

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Điền vào chỗ trống although/ despite/ in spite of sao cho thích hợp.

- _____ we are a small company, we sell almost a hundred machines a month.
- _____ all the difficulties, the project started on time and was a success.
- _____ we were warned against doing so, we went ahead with the project.
- _____ his lack of experience, he became a successful businessman.
- _____ being by far the oldest player, he scored three goals.
- _____ he's a millionaire, he drives a second-hand car.
- _____ it rained a lot I enjoyed the holiday.
- _____ working for the company for six months now, he never seems to know what to do.
- _____ my warnings, he went to Colombia.
- _____ she didn't want to see The lord of the Rings, she enjoyed it in the end.
- _____ being bad at pool, she beat him three times in a row.
- She decided to go abroad for a year _____ loving her boyfriend very much.
- He went on holiday to Thailand _____ the expensive airfare.
- I phone my brother in Thailand using Skype nearly every day _____ the time difference.
- The best things in life are free, _____ love is often very expensive.

Bài 2: Chuyển những câu dưới đây thành câu có chứa **"in spite of"**.

- Even though sherry had excellent grades, she wasn't admitted to the university.
- The firefighters rescued the dog in the burning house although it was very dangerous.
- Though the weather was very cold, we went swimming last week.
- Even though the work was very hard, we enjoyed doing that job.
- Although Jane has very little money, she is happy.

Chuyển những câu dưới đây thành câu có chứa **"despite"**.

- I like living in my apartment although it is noisy.
- Even though it costs a lot, Stephanie goes to private high school.

8. Though the weather has been extremely hot, I run five miles every day.
9. Kerry came to class to take the test even though he was ill.
10. Bill Gates has been very successful even though he never finished college.

Bài 3: Nối 2 câu dưới đây thành 1 câu, sử dụng các từ trong ngoặc.

1. Dave smokes. He seems to be in good health. (although)
2. I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (despite)
3. Max didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (even though)
4. Kate never learnt Spanish. She lived in Spain for many years. (although)
5. Joe is a millionaire .He hates spending money. (despite)
6. I gave him good advice. Yet he failed. (despite)
7. His vision is poor. Still he reads books. (in spite of)
8. She was ill. Still she went to work. (despite)
9. The weather was bad. Still we went out. (in spite of)
10. His health is poor. Still he attends office regularly.(in spite of)

II VERB + TO-INFINITIVE/ VERB + V-ING

1. Verbs + to-infinitive

Một vài động từ phổ biến thường được theo sau bởi “to V”

afford (có khả năng)	threaten (dọa)	hope (hy vọng)	prepare (chuẩn bị)
agree (đồng ý)	decide (quyết định)	learn (học)	pretend (giả vờ)
appear (có vẻ)	demand (yêu cầu)	manage (xoay sở)	promise (hứa)
arrange (sắp xếp)	expect (trông đợi)	wait (đợi)	refuse (từ chối)
ask (hỏi)	dare (dám)	need (cần)	seem (dường như)
attempt (cố gắng)	fail (thất bại)	offer (mời)	want (muốn)
beg (đề nghị, xin)	hesitate (ngập ngừng)	plan (dự định, kế hoạch)	claim (cho là, tuyên bố)

Ví dụ:

- I want to study abroad.
- She learned hard to get good marks.
- She promised to take me to the zoo.

2. Verbs + v-ing

Một vài động từ phổ biến thường được theo sau bởi “V-ing”

Admit: thú nhận	Suggest: gợi ý	Finish: kết thúc	Detest: ghét
Avoid: tránh	Hate: ghét	Enjoy/ love: thích thú	Permit: cho phép
Advise: khuyên	Practice: thực hành	Deny: từ chối	Risk: mạo hiểm
Delay: hoãn lại	Mention: đề cập	Consider: xem xét	Quit: từ bỏ

Admit: thú nhận	Suggest: gợi ý	Finish: kết thúc	Detest: ghét
Imagine: tưởng tượng	Involve: liên quan đến	Keep: giữ, tiếp	Miss: lỡ, nhớ
Fancy: đam mê	Mind: phiền (would... mind)	Discuss: thảo luận	Dislike/Like: không thích/thích

Ví dụ:

- He admitted taking the money.
- He detests writing letters.
- He didn't want to risk getting wet.
- I can't understand his/ him leaving his wife.

3. Verb + to infinitive/ v-ing không khác nghĩa

Một vài động từ được theo sau bởi To Infinitive hoặc V-ing mà ý nghĩa không đổi.

like	prefer	start
hate	intend (dự định)	continue
love	begin	bother (làm phiền)

Ví dụ:

- He began to laugh. = He began laughing.
- It started to rain. = I started raining.
- Anna intends to buy a car = Anna intends buying a car.

4. Verb + to infinitive/ v-ing khác nghĩa

Một vài động từ được theo sau bởi To Infinitive hoặc V-ing có sự khác biệt về ý nghĩa.

Verb	+ ToV	+V-ing
NEED	Need to V: cần phải làm (động từ nguyên mẫu mang nghĩa chủ động)	Need V-ing: cần phải được làm (động từ nguyên mẫu mang nghĩa bị động)
	Ví dụ: - Tom needs to work harder. (Tom cần làm việc chăm chỉ hơn.) - The grass in front of the house needs cutting. (Cỏ trước nhà cần được cắt.)	
STOP	Stop to V: dừng lại để làm việc gì khác	Stop V-ing: dừng làm việc gì đó (đang làm)
	Ví dụ: -They stopped to look at the pictures. (Họ dừng lại để nhìn vào các bức tranh.) -They stopped smoking because it is bad for their health. (Họ ngừng hút thuốc bởi vì nó có hại cho sức khỏe.)	
REGRET	Regret to V: lấy làm tiếc phải (thông báo 1 điều gì xấu)	Regret + V-ing: hối tiếc đã làm gì (trong quá khứ)

	Ví dụ: - I regret to inform you that they have decided to cancel the meeting. (Tôi laylảm tiếc khi phải thông báo với bạn rằng họ đã quyết định hủy cuộc họp.) - I regret not speaking to her before she left. (Tôi hối tiếc vì đã không nói với cô ấy trước khi cô ấy đi.)	
REMEMBER	Remember to V: nhớ sẽ phải làm gì (ở hiện tại và tương lai)	Remember V-ing: nhớ đã làm gì (ở quá khứ).
	Ví dụ: - Remember to send this letter. (Hãy nhớ gửi bức thư này). - I still remember paying her \$2. (Tôi nhớ đã trả cô ấy 2 đô la).	
FORGET	Forget to V: quên sẽ phải làm gì (ở hiện tại và tương lai)	Forget V-ing: quên đã làm gì (ở quá khứ).
	Ví dụ: - I forget to post this letter. (Tôi quên mất phải gửi lá thư này.) - She will never forget meeting the Queen. (Cô ấy không bao giờ quên lần gặp nữ hoàng.)	
TRY	Try to V: cố gắng làm	Try V-ing: thử làm
	Ví dụ: - She tries to pass the entrance exam to the college of pharmacy. (Cô ấy cố gắng để vượt qua được kì thi đầu vào trường đại học dược.) - I've got a terrible headache. I try taking some aspirins but they didn't help (Tôi bị đau đầu kinh khủng. Tôi thử uống thuốc giảm đau nhưng nó không hiệu quả.)	
Go on		
	Go on to V: làm tiếp một việc gì khác	Go on V-ing: tiếp tục làm cùng một việc
	Ví dụ: After discussing the English speaking club, we went on to sing. I went on talking for 2 hours.	

■ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 4: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây. Chọn động từ thích hợp và cho dạng V-ing.

Emigrate go	have to	help	leave	marry	stay	phone
read	say (2)	see	talk	tell	travel	

- Fancy regrets _____ a man so much younger than herself!
- If you like tongue-twisters, try _____ "Six Swiss wrist watches."
- Are you a student at this school? I don't recollect _____ you here before.
- I'm sorry to trouble you, but would you mind _____ me with this suitcase?

5. It's very late. I suggest _____ the washing-up until the morning.
6. I started work when I was 16. Now, I regret not _____ at school.
7. I'll never finish _____ these papers! There are so many of them!
8. Would you consider _____ if things got worse in this country?
9. If you find the sound [h] difficult, practice _____ "He hit her on her hairy head with a hard, heavy hammer".
10. You should try to avoid _____ in the rush hour.
11. I have enjoyed _____ to you, and I hope we meet again some time.
12. I deny _____ you what to wear and what to do.
13. I simply couldn't resist _____ you to tell you the good news!
14. She is afraid of the dentist, so she always puts off _____ till the last possible moment.
15. Can you imagine _____ walk five miles to school every day? That is what we had to do.

Bài 5: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc, to V hoặc V-ing.

1. I intend _____ to Brazil in August. (go)
2. I arranged _____ my vacation during the last two weeks. (take)
3. I considered _____ to Venezuela or Argentina first. (go)
4. But I decided _____ them for next year. (leave)
5. The government has demanded me _____ a visa to go to Brazil. (get)
6. That involved _____ in a long line at the consulate. (stand)
7. I didn't mind _____ the \$fee. (pay)
8. But I hate _____ in lines. (wait)
9. I also detest _____ passport photos. (get)
10. I really want _____ the country, so I did it. (see)
11. I haven't begun _____ yet. (pack)
12. I'll start soon because I can't stand _____ in a rush. (pack)
13. I remembered _____ my neighbor to take care of my dog. (ask)
14. He doesn't really mind _____ behind. (stay)
15. But he always loves _____ us come back! (see)

Bài 6: Chọn động từ cho sẵn dưới đây để điền vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp.

enjoy	need	will offer	agreed	would like
love	plan	considered	forgot	stop
quit	hate	had hoped	mind	discuss

1. We _____ visiting Hawaii for our vacation, but we changed our mind.
2. Iva and Isis _____ to talk to everyone about their secret project.

3. The Smiths _____ spending time together. They always look happy when they are riding their bicycles or watching television.
4. I don't _____ working hard. Hard work gives a person character.
5. Could you please _____ staring at me! It is making me crazy!
6. My husband and I will _____ adopting a baby. We have talked about it a lot already, but we will keep talking about it.
7. The students _____ to have a party at the end of the semester.
8. My mother _____ to water my plants. Now they are all dead.
9. They _____ to work together. They shook hands on the deal.
10. I _____ eating spinach. I would rather eat nothing at all!
11. Maria _____ to teach full-time, but she could only find a part-time job.
12. Jose _____ smoking last week.
13. We _____ to go to the bank early in the morning. We cannot go in the afternoon or in the evening because we must get the money immediately.,
14. Ms. Kelly and her friend _____ eating pizza! It is their favorite food.
15. The buyers _____ to pay \$200,000 for the house. They are not sure if it will be accepted.

Bài 7: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc dạng to V hoặc V-ing.

Mike doesn't like _____ (1-dance). He would rather _____ (2-go) to the cinema. But Jean enjoys _____ (3-dance) so much that he let her _____ (4-persuade) him _____ (5-take) her to the club last Saturday. When they arrived, a lot of other young men wanted _____ (6-dance) with her and kept _____ (7-ask) her _____ (8-go) on the floor with them. This made Mike _____ (9-feel) jealous. He suggested _____ (10-go) outside for a breath of air, but at that moment it started _____ (11-rain). Jean began to get annoyed. "I know you hate _____ (12-dance)", she said, "but why should you _____ (13-try) _____ (14-stop) other people _____ (15-dance)?" Mike thought he had better _____ (16-dance) with her. He didn't want her _____ (17-lose) her temper.

■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 8: Viết lại những câu dưới đây, sử dụng từ trong ngoặc.

1. I couldn't sleep although I was tired. (despite)

2. Although he has got an English name, he is in fact German. (despite)

3. In spite of her injured foot, she managed to walk to the village. (although)

4. I decided to accept the job although the salary was low. (In spite of)

5. We lost the match although we were the better team. (despite)

6. In spite of not having eaten for 24 hours, I didn't feel hungry. (even though)

7. Although she was tired, she went to work. (but)

8. They went out for a walk, even though the weather was bad. (despite)

9. She managed to write in spite of her injured hand. (although)

10. She has plenty of money, but she is very mean. (although)

Bài 9: Khoanh vào phương án đúng.

1. We went out _____ the rain.
A. in spite of B. however C. although
2. We went out _____ it rained.
A. despite B. although C. however
3. She went on working _____ she was tired.
A. although B. despite C. either could be used here
4. She went on working _____ the fact that she was tired.
A. despite B. however C. although
5. _____ she is a nice girl, I don't quite like her.
A. although B. despite C. however
6. _____ expensive, it was a good watch.
A. however B. although C. despite
7. I didn't like the film _____, everybody else seemed to enjoy it.
A. however B. despite C. either could be used here
8. _____ I didn't like the film, everybody else seemed to enjoy it.
A. although B. however C. either could be used here
9. We managed to do it _____ he wasn't there.
A. however B. although C. either could be used here
10. We managed to do it, _____ the fact that he was not there.
A. although B. despite C. however

Bài 10: Cho dạng đúng của động từ, to V hoặc V-ing.

1. He dreads _____ (have) to retire.
2. I arranged _____ (meet) him there.

3. Don't forget _____ (lock) the door before _____ (go) to bed.
4. He tried _____ (explain) but she refused _____ (listen).
5. He decided _____ (disguise) himself by _____ (dress) as a woman.
6. Please go on _____ (write); I don't mind _____ (wait).
7. I prefer _____ (drive) to _____ (be) driven.
8. I suggest _____ (telephone) the hospitals before _____ (ask) the police _____ (look) for him.
9. Did you remember _____ (give) him the key of the safe?
10. Why do you keep _____ (look) back? Are you afraid of _____ (be) followed?
11. You'll never regret _____ (do) a kind action.
12. I didn't mean _____ (eat) anything but the cakes looked so good that I couldn't resist trying one.
13. If you want _____ (catch) the 7 a.m. train tomorrow, that means _____ (get) up at 6, and you're not very good at _____ (get) up early, are you?
14. By _____ (work) day and night he succeeded in _____ (finish) the job in time.
15. Try _____ (forget) it; it is not worth _____ (worry) about.
16. After _____ (get) _____ (know) him better, I regretted _____ (judge) him unfairly.
17. He tried _____ (speak) German but found that he couldn't. His attempts at _____ (speak) Spanish were equally unsuccessful.
18. I would advise you _____ (wait) before _____ (decide) _____ (accept) his offer.
19. Surely you remember _____ (lend) him the money? I hope, at least, that he _____ won't forget (pay) you back. He has a habit of _____ (forget) things he doesn't want _____ (remember).

Bài 11: Chọn dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành đoạn văn dưới đây.

Early automobiles

Many inventors were trying (1) _____ (build) gas-powered, self-propelled vehicles in the late 1800's, a French inventor succeeded in (2) _____ (create) a steam-powered tricycle in 1769. A German engineer, Nikolaus August Otto, is known for (3) _____ (invent) the four-stroke gas-powered engine in 1876. Both Gottlieb Daimler and Carl Benz managed (4) _____ (build) and (5) _____ (sell) autos in Germany in the 1880s. By 1898 there were 50 companies responsible for (6) _____ (market) cars in the United States alone. That number happened (7) _____ (expand) to 241 by 1908. It was in 1908 when Henry Ford started (8) _____ (make) automotive history. It was in that year that he managed (9) _____ (put) together the first assembly line and (10) _____ (lower) the price of automobiles so that everyone could buy one. He began (11) _____ (arrange) workers so that they could each do a small part of the job in sequence. This prevented (12) _____ (repeat) a log of unnecessary steps in the assembly process. By 1913 he managed (13) _____ (produce) 250,000 cars a year. His first mass-produced car, the Model T, guaranteed

(14) _____ (give) modest-income Americans decent transportation for a reasonable(\$500 USD!) price. Henry Ford went on (15) _____ (lead) the U.S. automobile industry for many years. Though he tried, he failed (16) _____ (get) elected to the U.S. Senate in 1918. His company was started with just \$28,000 and, by 1913, managed (17) _____ (pay) dividends of \$11 million. While Ford declined (18) _____ (give) away more than a modest amount during his lifetime, the Ford Foundation arranges (19) _____ (donate) millions of dollars each year to deserving causes.

Bài 12: Viết lại các câu dưới đây sao cho không thay đổi ý nghĩa. Dùng to V hoặc V-ing.

1. You could sit by the window or outside on the terrace.

Would _____ you _____ prefer _____

_____ 2. They went on smoking all through the meal.

They _____ didn't _____ stop _____

_____ 3. I forgot to bring my wallet with me.

I didn't remember _____ 4.

Expensive restaurants are out of my price range.

I _____ can't _____ afford _____

_____ 5. You could share my pizza, if you like.

I _____ don't _____ mind _____ you _____

_____ 6. I look forward to having lunch with you again.

I hope _____ 7.

They argued all the morning about drugs.

They _____ spent _____

_____ 8. We must chase it out before it does any more damage.

We _____ must _____ chase _____ it _____ out _____ to _____ prevent _____ it _____

Bài 13: Đọc đoạn văn và trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây.

I know that it is my job to make sure that everything goes well for the tourists and I feel I work hard for the company. I cannot be blamed for last week. I met the group 25 at the airport and took them to the coach. The coach driver was a bit annoyed because the flight was late. But it wasn't far to the hotel and everyone was looking forward to their dinner. We hadn't used the Hotel Riviera before but our normal one had a conference in it so was fully booked. When I announced our arrival at the reception desk, they said they were full. I had booked rooms for the group but the manager said they were cancelled by phone a few days before. He insisted that he recognized my voice and that I had made the phone call. We had a bit of an argument

but they obviously didn't have enough rooms. In the end the manager phoned other hotels in the town and found rooms for everyone but in four different hotels. By this time the coach had gone so we had to get taxis and some of the tourists started to get very angry with me. I still don't know who made that phone call but it definitely wasn't me.

1. What is the writer trying to do?
 A. argue B. apologize C explain D. complain
2. Who was the text written to?
 A. one of the tourists B. the writer's employer
 C. the hotel manager D. the coach company
3. Why weren't any rooms available at the Hotel Riviera?
 A. A conference was taking place there.
 B. There were more people in the group than expected.
 C. Someone had forgotten to book them.
 D. Someone had said they were not needed.
4. What happened in the end?
 A. The tourists got angry with the local manager.
 B. The tourists couldn't stay together.
 C. The writer found other hotels with rooms.
 D. The writer called the coach driver back.
5. Which of the following diaries was written by one of the tourists?
 A. Someone had made a mistake with our hotel booking and the hotel had given our rooms to other people.
 B. The hotel we were taken to wasn't good enough so we asked to change to a different one.
 C. We got to the airport and had to wait for the coach. So it was really late when we got to the hotel.
 D. The coach driver took us to the wrong hotel and they knew nothing about us.

ĐÁP ÁN

UNIT

01

ANSWER

LOCAL ENVIRONMENT

Bài 1:

1. C. before
Mẹ tôi đã từng kể chuyện cho tôi trước khi tôi đi ngủ.
2. A. in case
Bạn nên mang chìa khóa đi trong trường hợp tôi ra ngoài.
3. B. although
Anh trai tôi thích ăn gà rán, mặc dù nó rất có hại cho sức khỏe.
4. C. while
Hôm qua, Jim đang chơi pi-a-nô trong khi chị cậu ấy chơi sáo.
5. A. as
Bạn không nên dành quá nhiều thời gian vào máy tính vì nó có hại cho mắt của bạn.
6. B. as soon as
Tôi sẽ gọi điện cho bạn ngay sau khi tôi đến đó.
7. A. until
Nhà khoa học thường làm việc trong phòng thí nghiệm cho đến khi mặt trời lặn.
8. C. Unless
Trừ khi bạn hứa không nói dối nữa, tôi sẽ không tha thứ cho bạn.
9. C. Even though
Mặc dù chân cô ấy bị đau, cô ấy vẫn cố gắng kết thúc đường đua.
10. A. as if
Cô ấy nói như thể là cô ấy chứng kiến vụ tai nạn vậy. Nhưng thực tế cô ấy chẳng biết gì cả.
11. C. since
Tôi không hoàn thành bài tập về nhà vì tôi bị ốm nặng hôm qua.
12. A. so that
James quyết định tiết kiệm tiền từ bây giờ để mà anh ấy có đủ tiền để đi du lịch mùa hè này.
13. B. though
Mặc dù chúng tôi mới chỉ là bạn được có một năm, chúng tôi rất hiểu nhau.
14. C. whereas
Ông Smith không thích chó, nhưng vợ của ông ấy lại yêu chúng.
15. A. when

Tôi đang đạp xe về nhà thì tôi nhìn thấy Jim đứng gần đài phun nước.

Bài 2:

1. When

Khi Jim về nhà, cậu nhận ra ai đó đã đột nhập vào nhà cậu

ấy. 2. in case

Bạn nên mang áo mưa trong trường hợp trời mưa.

3. since

Họ đã là đồng nghiệp từ khi họ tốt nghiệp.

4. Unless

Trừ khi Jim cố gắng hơn trong việc học, cậu ấy sẽ không theo kịp bạn cùng lớp.

5. before

Mẹ tôi luôn luôn nhắc nhở tôi rửa tay trước khi tôi dùng bữa.

6. as long as

Chúng tôi sẽ đi dã ngoại miễn là thời tiết tốt.

7. as though

James cư xử như thể là chưa có chuyện gì xảy ra.

8. because

Tôi không thể đi vào chủ nhật vì tôi rất bận.

9. while

Khi tôi về nhà, bố tôi đang cắt cỏ trong khi mẹ tôi đang tưới khóm hoa.

10. although

Mặc dù tôi không hợp với Mary, nhưng tôi thực sự hâm mộ sự thông minh và xinh đẹp của cô ấy.

Bài 3:

1 – g 2 – a 3 – f 4 – c 5 – b 6 – h 7 – e 8 – d

1. Jane không nhận ra lỗi sai của cô ấy (g) cho đến khi mẹ chỉ ra cho cô ấy.
2. Họ đang chơi trong sân thì (a) tuyết bắt đầu rơi.
3. Nếu bạn cho thấy nỗ lực của bạn trong công việc, (f) bạn có thể sẽ được thăng tiến sớm.
4. Cặp đôi này đã ở thành phố New York hai năm (c) trước khi họ chuyển đến đây.
5. Mẹ tôi thường mua sắm ở siêu thị địa phương (b) mặc dù nó xa với nhà tôi.
6. Đã rất lâu rồi (h) kể từ khi chúng tôi gặp nhau lần cuối.
7. Tôi cố gắng học chăm chỉ (e) để mà tôi sẽ có một công việc tốt trong tương lai.
8. Kể cả khi tôi có một chiếc xe ô tô, (d) tôi sẽ vẫn di chuyển bằng phương tiện công cộng.

Bài 4:

1. Jim was absent from class yesterday **because/ since/ as** he was suffering from a bad cold.
Jim nghỉ học hôm qua vì anh ấy bị cảm nặng.
2. They decided to move their house **so that** they don't have to travel a long distance to work.

Họ quyết định chuyển nhà để mà họ không phải đi xa để đi làm.

3. **Mary hurt her fingers yesterday when she was preparing dinner.**

Mary làm đau ngón tay của cô ấy khi cô ấy đang chuẩn bị bữa tối.

4. **At 4 pm yesterday, my mother was cleaning the house while I was looking after my younger brother.**

Vào lúc 4 giờ chiều qua, mẹ tôi đang dọn nhà trong khi tôi đang chăm sóc em trai.

5. **They decided to go on an excursion because they want to get away from work stress.**

Họ quyết định đi một chuyến đi dài ngày vì họ muốn trốn thoát khỏi áp lực công việc.

6. **I didn't know how to use the computer before my father taught me how to use it.**

Tôi không biết cách sử dụng máy tính trước khi bố tôi dạy tôi dùng.

7. **I will call you as soon as I arrive at the station.**

Tôi sẽ gọi cho bạn ngay sau khi tôi đến ga.

8. **My brother is very out-going whereas I am quite reserved.**

Anh trai tôi rất cởi mở trong khi tôi khá dè dặt.

9. **Mr. Peter was walking home when he was robbed of his wallet.**

Ông Peter đang đi bộ về nhà thì ông ấy bị cướp mất ví.

10. **I don't have a pet because my mother doesn't allow me to have one.**

Tôi không có thú cưng vì mẹ tôi không cho phép tôi nuôi.

Bài 5:

1. although/ though/ even though

Mặc dù trời đang mưa, chúng tôi sẽ đi bộ trong công viên.

2. Unless

Trừ khi cô ấy nộp bài tập trước thứ ba, cô ấy sẽ nhận điểm kém.

3. although/ though/ even though

Anh ấy quyết định tin Jim mặc dù cậu ta không phải một người trung thực.

4. because/ as/ since

Jenifer quyết định chia tay với Peter vì cậu ta không dành nhiều thời gian cho cô ấy.

5. although/ though/ even though

Danny mua một cái xe mới trong khi xe cũ của cậu ta vẫn tốt.

6. if

Tôi sẽ gặp vấn đề lớn nếu mẹ tôi biết điểm thi của tôi.

7. by

Janice để hoàn thành bài báo cáo vào thời điểm bạn nhận được thư.

8. if

Buổi hòa nhạc sẽ bị hủy nếu không có thêm vé nào được bán.

9. unless

Trẻ em không được phép vào khu vực này trừ khi chúng đi kèm người lớn.

10. In case

Bạn nên mang áo khoác dày trong trường hợp nhiệt độ giảm vào ban đêm.

11. although/ though/ even though

Mặc dù chị tôi không thích ăn rau trộn, chị ấy ăn chúng hàng ngày để giữ dáng.

12. even if

Tôi sẽ không đến bữa tiệc của Jim kể cả khi cậu ta mời tôi.

13. Unless

Trừ khi bạn nói với tôi sự thật tôi không thể giúp bạn.

14. When

Khi những người lính cứu hỏa đến, ngọn lửa đã được dập tắt.

15. if

Bạn có thể về sớm nếu bạn muốn.

Bài 6:

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| 1. turn down: từ chối | 9. run out of: hết | |
| 2. deal with: giải quyết | 10. get on (well) with: có quan hệ tốt | |
| 3. live on: sống dựa vào | 11. set up: tạo lập, bắt đầu | 4. take off: cất cánh |
| | | 12. find out: tìm ra |
| 5. take up: bắt đầu | 13. count on: dựa dẫm vào | |
| 6. warm up: khởi động | 14. drop by: ghé chơi | |
| 7. dress up: mặc đẹp | 15. bring up: nuôi lớn | |
| 8. work out: tìm | | |

Bài 7:

- | | | |
|----------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. get | 6. turned | |
| | get on (well) with: có quan hệ tốt | turn down: từ chối |
| 2. catch | 7. cut | |
| | catch up with: bắt kịp ai | cut down on: giảm |
| 3. got | 8. face | |
| | get back on: trả thù | face up to: đối mặt với |
| 4. give | 9. look | |
| | give up: từ bỏ | look forward to: trông đợi |
| 5. deal | 10. look | |

deal with: giải quyết, xử lý look back on: xem lại, hồi tưởng lại

Bài 8:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Lỗi sai: worked up | 6. Lỗi sai: made sure about |
| Sửa: worked out: tìm ra | Sửa: made sure of: chắc chắn |
| 2. Lỗi sai: grows out | 7. Lỗi sai: carried on |
| Sửa: grows up: lớn lên | Sửa: carried out: tiến hành |

3. Câu đúng 8. Câu đúng
4. *Lỗi sai*:keepupto 9. *Lỗi sai*:getting rid
Sửa:keep up with: theo kịp *Sửa*:getting rid of: loại bỏ
5. *Lỗi sai*:closed up 10. *Lỗi sai*:see through
Sửa:closed down:đóng cửa *Sửa*:look through: nhìn qua

Bài 9:

1. bring out
Ca sĩ này sẽ cho ra mắt một album mới năm nay.
2. count on
Peter rất đáng tin cậy. Bạn có thể dựa vào cậu ấy.
3. cut...down to
Bạn nên giảm bài luận văn của bạn xuống còn 500 chữ.
4. turned down
Jim rất buồn vì anh ấy đã bị từ chối bởi 5 công ty rồi.
5. put up with
Tôi không thể chịu đựng được những âm thanh khó chịu đó nữa.
6. telling off
Mẹ tôi luôn luôn la rầy tôi.
7. taken up
Ông Smith vừa bắt đầu chơi golf.
8. dealing with
Bạn có thấy mệt khi phải giải quyết những phàn nàn của khách hàng không?
9. came down with
Bây giờ bạn như nào? Tôi nghe nói rằng bạn đã bị cảm tuần trước.
10. Hold on
Đợi đã! Tôi nghĩ chúng ta đã lạc đường. Đây không phải là con đường đúng.

Bài 10:

1. *Jane plays the piano extremely well although she is very young.*
Jane chơi pi-a-no rất hay mặc dù cô ấy còn rất nhỏ tuổi.
2. *Josh is applying for a new job because he has been fired recently.*
Josh đang xin một công việc mới vì anh ta vừa bị sa thải.
3. *My mother had cooked me breakfast before she went to work.*
Mẹ tôi đã nấu bữa sáng cho tôi trước khi bà ra khỏi nhà.
4. *I prefer staying at home to going out because I don't like socializing.*
Tôi thích ở nhà hơn là ra ngoài vì tôi không thích giao lưu.
5. *Everyone enjoyed the party last night although the food was not so good.*

Mọi người đều thích bữa tiệc tối qua mặc dù đồ ăn không được tốt cho lắm.

6. **Jim cannot catch up with his classmates because he often plays truant.**

Jim không thể theo kịp bạn cùng lớp vì cậu ta thường hay trốn học.

7. **Peter studies very hard so that he can get high scores.**

Peter học chăm chỉ để cậu ấy có thể có điểm cao.

8. **Many of my friends enjoy going shopping whereas I don't like this.**

Nhiều người bạn của tôi thích mua sắm trong khi tôi thì không.

Bài 11:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. shows off: khoe khoang | 6. go in for: tham gia |
| 2. came down with: mắc bệnh | 7. turned down: từ chối |
| 3. cut down on: giảm | 8. go along with: đồng ý với |
| 4. faced up to: đối mặt với | 9. take up: bắt đầu |
| 5. dropped in: ghé thăm | 10. kept up: tiếp tục |

Bài 12:

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. up to | 6. up for | |
| look up to: kính trọng | | wait up for: chờ đợi đến khuya |
| 2. in for | 7. up with | |
| go in for: tham gia | | put up with: chịu đựng |
| 3. up for | 8. on with | |
| make up for: bù đắp | | get on with: có quan hệ tốt |
| 4. down with | 9. through with | |
| come down with: bị ốm | | get through with: trải qua |
| 5. away from | 10. rid of | |
| stay away from: tránh xa | get rid of: loại bỏ | Bài |

13:

1. **Lỗi sai:** Although
Sửa: Because she didn't warm up carefully before running, her leg was hurt during the race.
 Bởi vì cô ấy không khởi động kỹ trước khi chạy nên chân cô ấy bị thương trong cuộc đua.
2. **Lỗi sai:** though
Sửa: Everyone dressed up because they wanted to be the King or Queen of the prom.
 Mọi người mặc đẹp vì họ muốn thành King hoặc Queen của buổi dạ hội.
3. **Lỗi sai:** since
Sửa: Although I am really interested in lacquerware, I rarely buy one for me.
 Mặc dù tôi rất thích đồ sơn mài, tôi hiếm khi mua nó cho mình.
4. **Lỗi sai:** as though
Sửa: Although my brother and I don't get on well, we still care about the other.

Mặc dù anh tôi và tôi không hòa hợp với nhau, chúng tôi vẫn quan tâm đến nhau.

5. **Lỗi sai:** unless

Sửa: What would you do if you won a lottery?

Bạn sẽ làm gì nếu bạn trúng xổ số?

6. **Lỗi sai:** looks down on

Sửa: Mr. Smith is renowned artisan. Everyone looks up to him.

Ông Smith là một nghệ nhân nổi danh. Mọi người đều kính trọng ông.

7. **Lỗi sai:** While

Sửa: When I came home, my cat was sleeping on the sofa.

Khi tôi về nhà, con mèo của tôi đang ngủ trên sô-pha.

8. **Lỗi sai:** Because

Sửa: Although Peter cheated on me, I wouldn't get back on him.

Mặc dù Peter đã lừa dối tôi, tôi sẽ không trả thù anh ta.

Bài 14:

1. A. up get up: thức dậy

2. B. so that

Ngày hôm đó chúng tôi dậy rất sớm để mà chúng tôi có thể đến ngôi làng vào buổi sáng sớm.

3. C. Since

Bởi vì chúng tôi có những 20 thành viên, chúng tôi quyết định không đi xe trâu.

4. A. After

Sau khi chúng tôi đã thăm một số cửa hàng dọc con đường, cô giáo đưa chúng tôi đến...

5. C. passed down

Chúng tôi được kể là những kĩ thuật làm gốm này được truyền từ thế hệ này sang thế hệ khác.

6. B. Before

Trước khi chúng tôi rời đi, những người dân địa phương tặng chúng tôi...

7. C. forward to look forward to: trông đợi

Bài 15:

1. at the age of 37

Dẫn chứng: Nguyen Tran Hiep, born in northern province of Bac Ninh, has become the youngest artisan of Vietnam at the age of 37.

2. No, he didn't

Dẫn chứng: Before achieving all this, he had gone through with many difficulties in his work.

3. He categorized his customers into two types: foreign tourists and traders from China.

Dẫn chứng: He targeted two types of customers: the first is foreign tourists and the second is traders from China.

4. small handicrafts and souvenirs, such as small animals, paintings, tea trays, figurines and rosaries

Dẫn chứng: For the tourists, his workshop mainly produces small handicrafts and souvenirs, such as small animals, paintings, tea trays, figurines and rosaries.

5. 28 employees

Dẫn chứng: At present, his workshop renamed HiepThang Fine arts Cooperative, provides stable jobs for 28 employees...

6. Nguyen Tran Hiep's best works is "Bat Long vong quang phat"

Dẫn chứng: One of Nguyen Tran Hiep's best works is "Bat Long vong quang phat"... This work was made to celebrate the 80th anniversary of the founding of the Ho Chi Minh Communist Youth Union.

UNIT

02

CITY LIFE

Bài 1:

1. faster 9. slower
2. more populous 10. worse
3. more densely 11. better
4. more reliable 12. more familiar
5. better 13. more beautifully
6. further 14. more polluted
7. happier 15. more helpful
8. healthier

Giải thích:

- Cấu trúc so sánh với tính từ ngắn: "S1 + to be + **adj + er + than** + S2"
- Cấu trúc so sánh với tính từ dài: "S1 + to be + **more + adj + than** + S2"
- Cấu trúc so sánh với trạng từ ngắn: "S1 + V + **adv + er + than** + S2" - Cấu trúc so sánh với trạng từ dài: "S1 + V + **more + adv + than** + S2"

Bài 2:

1. faster 6. more severe
2. more poorly 7. higher
3. less 8. more cleverly
4. harder 9. more smoothly
5. more brightly 10. more fluently

Giải thích: Dựa vào câu để xác định dùng dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ hay trạng từ: Tính từ thường đứng sau "to be" hoặc trước danh từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đó. Trạng từ thường đứng trước hoặc sau động từ và bổ nghĩa cho động từ.

- Cấu trúc so sánh với tính từ ngắn: "S1 + to be + **adj + er + than** + S2"
- Cấu trúc so sánh với tính từ dài: "S1 + to be + **more + adj + than** + S2"

-Cấu trúc so sánh với trạng từ ngắn: "S1 + V + adv + er + than + S2"

-Cấu trúc so sánh với trạng từ dài: "S1 + Vmore + adv + than + S2"

Bài 3:

1. most intelligent

Josh là học sinh thông minh đứng thứ hai trong lớp.

2. more convenient

Giá như giao thông ở trị trấn của tôi thuận tiện hơn.

3. the most polluted

Hà Nội là một trong những thành phố ô nhiễm nhất trên thế giới.

4. more spacious

Tôi ước nhà tôi rộng rãi hơn.

5. the most stunning

Cho đến giờ, đây là cảnh tượng đẹp nhất mà tôi từng xem.

6. the tallest

Anh ta có vẻ là người cao nhất trong đám trẻ cùng tuổi.

7. better

Bạn làm khá tốt nhưng tôi đã kì vọng bạn làm tốt hơn. Bạn làm tôi có chút thất vọng.

8. the most inspiring

Đây hẳn là bài phát biểu truyền cảm hứng nhất của bạn.

9. better

Thú thật là tôi đã trông chờ một màn biểu diễn tốt hơn của bạn. Bạn đã không chuẩn bị kĩ đúng không?

10. the most expensive

Đây không phải là chiếc xe đắt nhất trong phòng trưng bày. Có rất nhiều xe khác có giá cao hơn.

Giải thích: Dựa vào ngữ cảnh để sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn hay so sánh nhất của tính từ.

Bài 4:

1. My old house is smaller than the current one.

2. He was expected to perform worse than he did.

3. This time Mike's brother run more slowly than him.

4. I think Jim will have a lower position in your company than you.

5. I decorated my cake less beautifully than Jane did.

6. Last year Peter invested a smaller amount of money on his business than this year.

7. Jim's computer is cheaper than mine.

8. Playing computer games is more time-consuming than playing sports.

Bài 5:

1. Residents of Ho Chi Minh City are more dynamic than residents of Ha Noi city.

2. Ha Noi City is less populous than Ho Chi Minh City. (*populous*: đông dân cư)
3. Ho Chi Minh City is more populous than Ha Noi City.
4. Ha Noi City is larger than Ho Chi Minh City.
5. Ho Chi Minh City is smaller than Ha Noi City.
6. Ha Noi City is less densely-populated than Ho Chi Minh City.
7. Ho Chi Minh City is more densely-populated than Ha Noi City.
8. In winter, it is colder in Ha Noi than in Ho Chi Minh.
9. In winter, it is warmer in Ho Chi Minh than in Ha Noi.

Bài 6:

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. after | 9. A. over | |
| take after: giống với | | take over: đảm nhiệm |
| 2. B. for | 10. B. up | |
| wait for: chờ đợi | | pick up: đón |
| 3. A. on | 11. C. off | |
| agree on: đồng ý (về việc gì) | | take off: cởi bỏ |
| 4. C. into | 12. B. up | |
| run into: tình cờ gặp | | make up: bịa ra, tạo ra |
| 5. A. up | 13. C. off | |
| use up: dùng hết | | see off: tiễn. |
| 6. C. for | 14. B. down | |
| look for: tìm kiếm | | put down: ghi chép lại |
| 7. B. in | 15. B. together | |
| believe in: tin tưởng vào | | keep together: gắn bó |

Bài 7:

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 1. put | 9. put | |
| put on: mặc vào | | put out: đưa ra |
| 2. got | 10. Take | |
| get down: làm thất vọng | | take off: cởi bỏ |
| 3. tells | 11. paying | |
| tell off: la rầy | | pay back: trả nợ |
| 4. turned | 12. got | |
| turn down: từ chối | | get down: làm thất vọng |
| 5. look | 13. passed | |
| look after: trông nom | | pass away: qua đời |
| 6. break | 14. attend | |
| break up: chia tay | | attend to: chú ý tới |

7. drop 15. belong

drop off: thả xuống xe

belong to: thuộc về

8. saving

save up: tiết kiệm

Bài 8:

1. off 6. out

set off: bắt đầu hành trình

put out: mang ra ngoài

2. after 7. off

take after: giống với ai đó

take off: cởi bỏ

3. over 8. up

take over: đảm nhiệm

shut (sb) up: ngăn không cho ai nói

4. into 9. for

cut into: cắt thành

look for: tìm kiếm

5. away 10. watch

put away: cất đi

watch out: coi chừng

Bài 9:

1. **Lỗi sai:** take you after

Sửa: take after you

2. **Lỗi sai:** use the natural resources up

Sửa: use up the natural resources

3. **Lỗi sai:** agreed me with

Sửa: agreed with me

4. **Lỗi sai:** broke them up

Sửa: broke up

s. Câu đúng

6. Câu đúng

7. **Lỗi sai:** clear your room up

Sửa: clear up your room

8. **Lỗi sai:** run my old teacher into

Sửa: run into my old teacher

9. **Lỗi sai:** showing her jewelry off

Sửa: showing off her jewelry

10. **Lỗi sai:** agreed with (đồng ý với ai đó)

Sửa: agreed on: đồng ý với điều gì

Giải thích: Các câu sai ở trên (trừ câu 10) đều sai về vị trí của tiểu từ và tân ngữ. Trong các câu đó, phrasal verbs có động từ và tiểu từ luôn đứng cạnh nhau.

Bài 10:

1. Yesterday the plane took off earlier than I expected.
2. My mother looks after us more carefully than my father.
3. They cut the big cake into smaller parts than I thought.
4. My sister even tells me off more often than my mother does.
5. Who did you see off yesterday?
6. It is cold today so I put on warmer clothes than usual.
7. Yesterday my father picked me up later than usual.
8. You are the prettiest girl I have ever known.
9. Unless you listen attentively to your teacher, you will not catch up with your friends.
10. By far, "The Little Prince" is my most favorite book.

Bài 11:

1. more tranquil

Tôi thích sống ở miền quê hơn là thành phố vì ở quê thì yên bình hơn. Tôi thực sự thích những khoảng khắc yên bình của cuộc sống.

2. more polluted

Mặc dù thành phố ô nhiễm hơn nông thôn, có nhiều hoạt động giải trí hơn mà tôi thực sự thích ở thành phố.

3. more ancient

Tôi không thể tin được cái bình này đã hơn 100 tuổi. Nó cổ hơn tôi nghĩ.

4. more densely

Thành phố thì luôn luôn đông đúc hơn nông thôn.

5. more populous

Thị trấn của tôi thì đông dân hơn rất nhiều so với 10 năm trước. Tôi nhớ là đã từng chỉ có vài ngôi nhà trong một vùng rộng lớn.

6. more spacious

Nhà ở nông thôn thì rộng rãi hơn nhà ở thành thị.

7. better

Người trẻ tuổi thường điều chỉnh tốt hơn với thay đổi hơn là người già.

8. faster

Số lượng các tòa nhà chọc trời ở thành phố đang tăng nhanh hơn bao giờ hết.

Bài 12:

1. see off

Tôi đã nhìn thấy rất nhiều người bật khóc khi họ tiễn bạn bè và người thân của họ ở sân bay.

2. agree with

Bạn có đồng ý với tôi rằng bạn đã không đủ cố gắng không?

3. told...off

Cô giáo bạn đã bao giờ mắng bạn chưa? Chưa, chưa từng. Cô ấy rất tốt.

4. haven't... paid

Tuần trước tôi đã mượn Tom \$50 để mua sách nhưng tôi chưa trả tiền cậu ấy.

5. pulled out

Bạn trai tôi bước về phía tôi và lấy ra một món quà nhỏ.

6. believe in

Tôi chưa bao giờ tin vào ma nhưng anh trai tôi thì luôn luôn sợ chúng.

7. Watch out

Coi chừng! Có một chiếc ô tô đang đến.

8. makes up

Tôi ghét cái cách Peter nói dối và bịa chuyện để lừa mọi người.

9. saved up

Bạn đã tiết kiệm đủ tiền để mua xe mới chưa?

10. get-down

Tôi hứa với mẹ tôi sẽ không để bà thất vọng, vậy nên tôi cố hết sức để đạt điểm cao.

Bài 13:

1. A. more peaceful

Giải thích: Sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ dài "peaceful".

2. A. less polluted

Giải thích: sử dụng dạng so sánh với "less" của tính từ dài "polluted".

3. A. However

4. A. much weaker

Giải thích: sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ ngắn "weak".

5. B. Besides

6. C. face to up: đối mặt với

7. D. better

Giải thích: sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của trạng từ "well".

8. B. put up with: chịu đựng **Bài 14:**

1. NG

2. F

Dẫn chứng: City dwellers often have a hectic pace of life, which means that they rarely have enough time for recreational activities.

3. T

Dẫn chứng: People have to work hard and compete fiercely to earn a decent living, which puts people under a lot of pressure.

4. F

Dẫn chứng: Furthermore, people have to put up with heavy pollution in the city.

5. NG

6. T

Dẫn chứng: While many people move to the city with hope of find a job, their dreams turn sour due to the competitive job market... Poorly-trained workers from rural areas may become jobless in the city.

UNIT

03

TEEN STRESS AND PRESSURE

Bài 1:

1. is 6. could
2. would 7. was
3. likes 8. cost
4. said 9. said
5. were 10. had just got

Giải thích:

-Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì hiện tại (say/ tell) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp giữ nguyên thì trong câu trực tiếp.

-Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì quá khứ (said/ told) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp cần lùi từ các thì hiện tại (ở câu trực tiếp) sang các thì quá khứ (ở câu gián tiếp), từ thì quá khứ sang thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

Bài 2:

1. C

Giải thích: Do động từ tường thuật ở dạng quá khứ là "said" nên "will" (trong câu trực tiếp) chuyển thành "would" (trong câu gián tiếp), "this" chuyển thành "that".

2. C

Giải thích: Do động từ tường thuật ở thì hiện tại "says" nên không có sự thay đổi về thì ở câu trực tiếp và câu gián tiếp, ngôi thứ hai "yourself" chuyển thành ngôi thứ nhất "myself".

3. C 4. C 5. c 6. A
7. B 8. C 9. B 10. B

Giải thích: Câu gián tiếp với từ để hỏi "how", theo sau bởi một động từ nguyên thể có "to".

Bài 3:

1. **Lỗi sai:** tomorrow

Sửa: the next day/ the following day

Giải thích: Trạng từ thời gian "tomorrow" ở câu trực tiếp chuyển về "the next day/ the following day" ở câu gián tiếp.

2. **Lỗi sai:**if

Sửa: whether

Giải thích:Để tường thuật lại dạng câu hỏi Yes/No questions, ta dùng cấu trúc “whether + to V”.

3. **Lỗi sai:**was

Sửa: if I was

Giải thích: Câu hỏi khi chuyển về dạng gián tiếp không đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ.

4. **Lỗi sai:**who was the winner of that competition

Sửa: who the winner of that competition was

Giải thích:Câu hỏi khi chuyển về dạng gián tiếp không đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ. 5. **Lỗi sai:**can't

Sửa:couldn't

Giải thích:Do động từ tường thuật ở dạng quá khứ là “said” nên “can't” chuyển thành “couldn't”.

6. **Lỗi sai:**have

Sửa:had

Giải thích:Do động từ tường thuật ở dạng quá khứ là “asked” nên thì hiện tại hoàn thành (trong câu trực tiếp) chuyển thành thì quá khứ hoàn thành (trong câu gián tiếp).

7. **Lỗi sai:**followingmonth

Sửa:the following month

8. **Lỗi sai:**had I

Sửa:I had

Giải thích: Câu hỏi khi chuyển về dạng gián tiếp không đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ. 9. **Lỗi sai:**stayed

Sửa:stay

Giải thích:Động từ thứ hai đứng sau “whetherto” nên để ở dạng nguyên thể.

10. **Lỗi sai:**this

Sửa:that

Giải thích: Trạng từ thời gian “this year” ở câu trực tiếp chuyển về “that year” ở câu gián tiếp.

Bài 4:

1. Many doctor say that teenagers undergo many physical and mental changes during their puberty.
2. Sometimes my mother tells me that I don't have to be so tense.
3. Peter said he was looking forward to his grandfather's gift.
4. Peter said if he pass this test, his father would buy him a new skateboard.
5. I told my teacher that I had forgotten to do my homework.
6. Jim said Mr. Brown owned two cars and three houses.
7. She said to me that she couldn't do it by herself.
8. My mother said she would go on a business trip the following week.

9. My manager said that someone had broken into our office the previous day.
10. He told me I might have trouble if I didn't do my homework.
11. The singer said he/she started his/her career three years before.
12. Jim told me it was not his book, it was mine.
13. Ann said to me that she has just received a postcard from her foreign friend.
14. He said that story had happened long before.
15. Peter said he hoped it would be sunny the following day.

Bài 5:

1. Jim asked his girlfriend how many pairs of shoes she had.
2. Peter asked Jane whether she was going to London the following week.
3. Mom asked my sister whether she had done the laundry.
4. Jane asked Peter whether his brother lived in London.
5. Jim asked his sister what she was doing then.
6. My classmate asked me whether I enjoyed the party the previous night.
7. My friends always ask me what genre of music I like the most.
8. My doctor asked me what I had done to cope with my work stress.
9. Jim asked me what I often did if I was sad.
10. Jim asked me who I had run into the day before.

Bài 6:

1. They said to me that I didn't have to do this if I didn't really want to.
2. He told me he saw Jim when he was walking home the day before.
3. Jane asked me if I would forgive Jim if he apologized to me.
4. I told Jane that Peter had been a friend of mine for 3 years.
5. Jim wondered whether he would be capable of winning that contest.
6. Josh said there had been a serious car accident right there the previous week.
7. Jane told me she was frustrated that Jim had forgotten their date the previous day.
8. Peter said that was the first time he had been to NYC.
9. Mr. Brown told his wife that their children had grown up, so she didn't have to care much about them.
10. Peter asked me what I would do if I won a lottery.

Bài 7:

1. Jim always wants to know whether he should study abroad or not.
2. When I was small, I told my mother that I wanted to be a superman.
3. Jim is confused because he isn't sure what to do now.
4. I have no idea what they are doing at the moment.
5. Please show me how to get to the nearest post office.
6. Now we have to decide where to go and what to do tomorrow.

7. Have you made up your mind where to spend your summer yet?
8. I cannot understand why Jim failed the final test.
9. My mother has just found out where I hid my exam paper.
10. Yesterday, my teacher carefully explained how young birds learnt to fly.

Bài 8:

1. B. prone (to sth): dễ mà phải chịu đựng cái gì
2. A. adolescence: tuổi vị thành niên
adolescent: người ở tuổi vị thành niên
adulthood: tuổi trưởng thành
adult: người trưởng thành
3. A. well-aware: nhận thức tốt
4. B. contributes (to sth): có đóng góp vào việc gì
5. C. puberty: quá trình dậy thì
6. C. frustrated (at sth): tức giận
7. C. with (deal with: giải quyết)

Bài 9:

1. F

Dẫn chứng: He and his friends are experiencing puberty, an important phase of development of a person when **physical and mental changes take place**.

2. F

Dẫn chứng: Boys in particular may find numerous changes within themselves which they sometimes **cannot understand properly without the guide** of parents and other experienced adults.

3. F

Dẫn chứng: When boys enter their puberty, they often **start taking interest in abstract concepts** and subjects such as justice, politics and arts.

4. F

Dẫn chứng: They also **begin** to understand the world around them, **planning out a life for themselves**, having dreams and life goals to fulfill.

5. T

Dẫn chứng: Along with a very new view of life and sense of self comes anxiety and confusion.

6. T

Dẫn chứng: For example, boys start to smoke or drink **because they are curious** and they think they are cool to do so.

7. F

Dẫn chứng: In short, this is a period of experiencing new things and new people, both the good and the bad.

8. F

Dẫn chứng: Force and punishments are **not highly recommended** in this phase as adolescents tend to be rebellious.

UNIT

04

LIFE IN THE PAST

Bài 1:

1. Jim used to do
2. Did Mary use to be
3. didn't use to travel
4. people used to do
5. used to have
6. used to be
7. used to set off
8. didn't use to cope
9. used to raise
10. used to be
11. did you use to confide
12. didn't use to use
13. didn't use to like
14. used to work
15. used to suffer

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “**used to**” dùng để chỉ hành động thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ mà bây giờ không còn làm nữa.

-Thể khẳng định: **S + used to + V...**

- Thể phủ định: **S + didn't use to + V...**

-Thể nghi vấn: **Did + S + use to + V...?**

Bài 2:

1. This used to be only a small company with several years of low profit.
2. Men used to be the breadwinner of the family and women used to depend greatly on men.
3. My sister admitted that she used to lie sometimes in the past.
4. Jim asked me what I used to preferred to do as a child.
5. Who used to take care of you when you were a toddler?
6. Jim didn't use to be interested in reading books when he was small.
7. I used to get all the attention from my parents before my little brother was born.
8. Bungalows used to be very popular 6 years ago.

Giải thích: Xác định đúng những thói quen, hành động hoặc trạng thái đã xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ và đã kết thúc, không còn ở hiện tại và chia theo cấu trúc phù hợp.

Bài 3:

1. used to live

Cả gia đình tôi đã từng sống dựa vào tiền lương của bố tôi nhưng bây giờ cả bố và mẹ tôi đều làm việc để nuôi gia đình.

2. used to look

Anh trai tôi đã từng chăm sóc tôi khi bố mẹ tôi đi làm.

3. used to be

Trong quá khứ, phụ nữ thường được cho là nên ở nhà, làm việc nhà và làm nghề nông thay vì đi học cao.

4. used to work - (used to) earn

Những người nông dân này đã từng làm việc rất vất vả nhưng kiếm ít tiền trước khi họ được hướng dẫn cách dùng công nghệ trong nông nghiệp.

5. didn't use to eat

Chúng tôi không thường ăn ở bên ngoài nhưng bây giờ chúng tôi thường làm vậy vì chúng tôi thỉnh thoảng quá bận để chuẩn bị bữa ăn.

6. didn't use to play

Phụ nữ đã từng không có vai trò quan trọng trong mảng chính trị.

7. used to own

Chú tôi đã từng sở hữu một trang trại cừu trước khi chú bán nó để chuyển về thành phố.

Bài 4:

1. could go 6. bought

2. earned 7. offered

3. didn't have 8. was/ were not doing

4. wasn't/ weren't raining 9. was/were

5. was/were 10. let **Giải thích:**

- Câu ước với "wish" ở hiện tại, diễn tả ao ước hoàn cảnh hiện tại xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai. Cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + V-ed" hoặc "S wish(es) + S + could + V".

- Câu ước diễn tả điều ước cho một sự việc ta mong muốn nó xảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói, cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + was/were + V-ing."

Bài 5:

1. The old man wishes this grandchild visited him more often.

2. I wish you could spend more time on studying.

3. They wish their team was the champion.

4. I wish I had more friends I wasn't lonely.

5. Mary wishes her parents didn't have to go on business trips so often.

6. Many people wish they were wealthy but I don't.

7. I wish my mother was less busy so she had more time with me.

8. Jim wishes his parents didn't expect too much from him.

Giải thích: Câu ước với "wish" ở hiện tại, diễn tả ao ước hoàn cảnh hiện tại xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai. Cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + V-ed" hoặc "S wish(es) + S + could + V".

Bài 6:

1. Jim wishes his friend didn't live very far from him.
2. My friend wishes she could afford her favorite camera.
3. We wish the teacher didn't make us do a lot of homework.
4. I wish I could sing as beautifully as my sister.
5. My father wishes his favorite football team didn't lost the ticket to the final.
6. I wish I had my own house at the moment.
7. Mr. Brown wishes he could get promotion this year.
8. Peter wishes that there wasn't too much noise from his neighbor.

Giải thích: Câu ước "wish" ở hiện tại diễn tả ao ước hoàn cảnh hiện tại xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai. Cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + V-ed" hoặc "S wish(es) + S + could + V".

Bài 7:

1. **Lỗi sai:** wishes

Sửa: wish

Giải thích: Câu ở thì hiện tại đơn với chủ ngữ số nhiều "Peter and Jane" nên động từ "wish" không chia.

2. Câu đúng

3. **Lỗi sai:** talks

Sửa: talked

Giải thích: Động từ "talk" vẫn diễn tả mong ước không có thật ở hiện tại nên chia ở dạng quá khứ.

4. **Lỗi sai:** have

Sửa: had

Giải thích: Động từ "have" vẫn diễn tả mong ước không có thật ở hiện tại nên chia ở dạng quá khứ.

5. Câu đúng

6. **Lỗi sai:** wasn't having

Sửa: didn't have

Giải thích: Với động từ "have to" ta không dùng dạng tiếp diễn.

7. **Lỗi sai:** will

Sửa: would

Giải thích: trong câu điều ước ở hiện tại, mệnh đề sau "wish" phải chia ở thì quá khứ nên "will" chia về dạng quá khứ là "would"

8. Câu đúng

Bài 8:

1. Did you use to make any terrible mistakes?

Bạn có từng mắc lỗi lầm nghiêm trọng nào không?

2. Mary wishes she could run into a famous figure.

Mary ước rằng cô ấy có thể bắt gặp một người nổi tiếng.

3. She doesn't believe that I used to be a lawyer.

Cô ấy không tin rằng tôi đã từng là một luật sư.

4. I never wish I would be a wealthy person.

Tôi không bao giờ ước tôi sẽ trở thành một người giàu có.

5. My sister used to make a wish list and send it to Santa Claus.

Chị gái tôi đã từng làm một danh sách các điều ước và gửi nó cho Santa Claus.

6. Do you know what company Jim used to work for?

Bạn có biết công ty mà Jim đã từng làm việc không?

7. I wish that my English teacher used simple language for us to understand.

Tôi ước rằng cô giáo tiếng Anh của tôi dùng ngôn ngữ đơn giản để chúng tôi có thể hiểu.

8. They wish they could improve their speaking skill by talking with foreigners.

Họ ước rằng họ có thể cải thiện kỹ năng nói tiếng bằng việc nói chuyện với người nước ngoài.

Bài 9:

1. to like watching cartoons

Giải thích: Cấu trúc "used to" dùng để chỉ hành động thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ mà bây giờ không còn làm nữa. 2. brother wasn't very lazy

Giải thích: Câu ước với "wish" ở hiện tại, diễn tả ao ước hoàn cảnh hiện tại xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai. Cấu trúc "S wish(es) + S + V-ed"

3. I was a university student.

4. to dream of becoming a superhero.

5. her father allowed her to go to a party.

6. he lived in the same neighborhood as me.

7. I used to do in my free time as a child.

8. wasn't cleaning the mess Jim has made.

Câu ước diễn tả điều ước cho một sự việc ta mong muốn nó xảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói, cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + was/were + V-ing." **Bài 10:**

1. buy

Chúng tôi đã từng mua đồ từ người bán hàng rong khi chúng tôi còn nhỏ.

2. dye

Trong quá khứ, phụ nữ Việt Nam đã từng nhuộm răng đen.

3. weren't

Tôi ước không có nhiều thảm họa thiên nhiên để con người không phải gánh chịu những hậu quả của chúng.

4. ride

Không ai trong lớp tôi đã từng cưỡi trâu như tôi.

5. fly

Họ không từng thả diều khi họ sống ở vùng nông thôn.

6. be

Gia đình mở rộng thường rất phổ biến ở Việt Nam nhiều năm về trước.

7. gave

Jane ước ai đó cho cô ấy một cơ hội để bắt đầu lại từ đầu.

3. became

Tôi ước tôi có thể trở thành một nghệ sĩ nổi danh.

9. play

Có phải mẹ bạn đã từng đóng vai trò của cả người cha và người mẹ khi bố bạn vắng nhà không?

10. didn't have

Tom ước cậu ấy không phải học lúc này.

Bài 11:

1. B. presumed: cho rằng

consumed: tiêu dùng

resumed: bắt đầu, tiếp tục lại

résumé: sơ yếu lý lịch

2. C. due

to = because of: bởi vì

3. A. breadwinner: trụ cột về kinh tế (người nuôi cả gia

đình)

4. B. didn't use to

5. A. do

Giải thích: Động từ chia ở thì hiện tại vì câu nói đến hành động ở thời điểm hiện tại (today).

6. D. Instead: thay vào đó

7. B. For example: ví dụ như

8. B. dye: nhuộm

Bài 12:

1. F

Dẫn chứng: In the past, Vietnam's educational system was under the influence of by many foreign cultures.

2. NG

3. T

Dẫn chứng: This influence is depicted in the early examinations held to recruit high mandarin officials.

4. F

Dẫn chứng: During the latter part of the 11th century, a National College was established for the education of sons or royalty and other high-ranking officials, which marked the beginning of Confucian education in Vietnam.

5. NG

6. T

Dẫn chứng: Those days, education became the most cherished ideals.

7. T

UNIT

05

WONDERS OF VIETNAM

Dã

n chứng: The scholar was looked up to and highly revered.

Bài 1:

1. *Lỗi sai:* reported

Sửa: was reported

Giải thích: Cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật “report”: “**It + was + reported + that + S + V**”.

2. *Lỗi sai:* People are

Sửa: It is

Giải thích: Cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật “think”: “**It + is + thought + that + S + V**”.

3. *Lỗi sai:* will

Sửa: would

Giải thích: Động từ tường thuật “claim” ở thì quá khứ nên mệnh đề sau đó cũng ở dạng quá khứ.

4. *Lỗi sai:* Did

Sửa: Was

Giải thích: Cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật “say”: “**It + was + said + that + S + V**”. Câu hỏi đảo “was” lên đầu câu.

5. *Lỗi sai:* Do people

Sửa: Is it

Giải thích: Cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật “believe”: “**It + is + believed + that + S + V**”. Câu hỏi đảo “is” lên đầu câu.

6. *Lỗi sai:* They aren't believe

Sửa: It isn't believed

Giải thích: cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật “believe”: “**It + is + believed + that + S + V**”.

7. *Lỗi sai:* rumor

Sửa: rumored

Giải thích: cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật “rumor”: “**It + was + rumored + that + S + V**”. Câu hỏi đảo “was” lên đầu câu.

8. *Lỗi sai:* is

Sửa: was

Giải thích: Động từ tường thuật ở dạng bị động thời quá khứ (dấu hiệu nhận biết “last year”).

Bài 2:

1. *It is widely believed that people will live on Mars in the future.*

Người ta tin tưởng rằng con người sẽ sống trên sao Hỏa trong tương lai.

2. *It was reported that \$200 was donated to build the local park.*

Người ta đã báo cáo rằng \$200 đã được quyên góp để xây công viên địa phương.

3. *Was it expected that Jim would come to the meeting yesterday?*

Có phải người ta đã biết Jim sẽ đến buổi họp hôm qua không?

4. *It is claimed that there is a spectacular view of the mountain from that hotel.*

Người ta đã tuyên bố rằng có một cảnh tượng ngoạn mục của ngọn núi nhìn từ khách sạn đó.

5. *It is believed that tourists should try traveling by rickshaw in Vietnam.*

Người ta tin rằng khách du lịch nên thử đi bằng xích lô ở Việt Nam.

6. *It was rumored that there were many picturesque cottages in that village.*

Người ta đã đồn đại rằng có rất nhiều ngôi nhà đẹp ở ngôi làng đó.

7. *It was claimed that a breathtaking scene of the lake could be seen from there.*

Người ta đã tuyên bố rằng một cảnh tuyệt đẹp của chiếc hồ có thể được nhìn thấy từ đó.

8. *Is it rumored that these trees will be cut down for road construction?*

Có phải người ta đồn đại rằng những cái cây này sẽ bị chặt bỏ để xây dựng đường không?

Bài 3:

1. *It is believed that Jim is going to study abroad.*

2. *It was rumored that there was a ghost in that house.*

3. *It was said that Jane would be able to win the contest.*

4. *It was claimed that everything they said was true.*

5. *It was reported that there was a serious accident on the main road.*

6. *It isn't thought that this camera costs that much.*

7. *Was it claimed that they had managed to solve the problem?*

8. *It wasn't expected that the building collapsed after the storm.*

Giải thích: Áp dụng cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi: “**It+is/ was+V_{pl} + that+ S + V**”, nếu câu ở thì hiện tại đơn thì dùng động từ to be “is”, nếu câu ở thì quá khứ đơn thì dùng động từ to be “was”.

Bài 4:

1. *It is widely believed that ghosts really exist.*

2. *It was rumored last year that a group of gangsters destroyed part of the building.*

3. *It was reported that there was an increase in the number of tourists last year.*

4. It was thought that the winner was team A but it turned out to be team B.
5. It is claimed by the local authorities that the community house will be built next year.
6. It is forecast that a terrible storm is coming.
7. It was told that Jim took a gap year after he (had) finished high school.
8. It is believed that national heritages need preserving.

Giải thích: Áp dụng cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi: “It + is/ was + V_{pl} + that + S + V”, nếu câu ở thì hiện tại đơn thì dùng động từ tobe “is”, nếu câu ở thì quá khứ đơn thì dùng động từ tobe “was”.

Bài 5:

1. take
2. playing
3. do
4. do
5. holding
6. change
7. should be
8. taking
9. go
10. should not choose

Giải thích: Cách dùng động từ suggest:

- Sau “suggest” là một động từ: “S + suggest + V-ing”;
- Sau “suggest” là một mệnh đề: “S + suggest + (that) + S + (should) + V nguyên mẫu”.

Bài 6:

1. should keep/ keep 5. should use/ use
2. shouldn't spend 6. should learn/ learn
3. not taking 7. should try/ try
4. should buy/ buy 8. throwing

Bài 7:

1. My neighbor suggested having dinner together.
2. My father suggested (that) my sister (should) visit my grandparent more often.
3. They suggested (that) there (should) be more streetlights in this neighborhood.
4. Did Mary suggest going out for picnic tomorrow?
5. The salesman suggested (that) Jim (should) choose the black trousers.
6. Peter suggested listening to the radio instead of watching TV.
7. I suggested (that) you should not be lazy any more.
8. They suggested sitting in a circle and sharing stories with others.

Bài 8:

1. Lỗi sai:sang 5. Lỗi sai :to work
Sửa: singing Sửa: working
2. Lỗi sai:submitted 6. Lỗi sai:was
Sửa: submit Sửa: should be/ be
3. Lỗi sai:paid 7. Lỗi sai:is

Sửa: pay

Sửa: should be/be

4. **Lỗi sai:**suggest 8. **Lỗi sai:**me **Sửa:** suggested/ suggests **Sửa:** (that) I **Bài 9:**

1. It wasn't expected that I would fail the final exam.
2. Is it thought that they will have the chance to visit that place?
3. It was expected that this summer holiday would be swelteringly hot.
4. It was reported that a vast area of forest in my hometown was destroyed.
5. Was it believed that the information was true?
6. Was it hoped that there would be a significant change in the standards of living?
7. It is never/ not believed that Peter and Jane will get married.
8. It is known that there is no life on Mars.

Bài 10:

1. going
Người bạn người nước ngoài của tôi gợi ý đi ngắm cảnh ở ngoại ô cuối tuần này.
2. visiting
Brown gợi ý đi thăm những địa điểm du lịch nổi tiếng nhất ở Việt Nam mùa hè này.
3. (should) get
Mẹ tôi gợi ý rằng tôi lấy lại năng lượng sau khi học vất vả bằng cách đi dã ngoại.
4. (should) buy
Peter gợi ý rằng tôi nên mua cho lũ trẻ vài vòng tay như quà lưu niệm sau chuyến công tác ở Trung Quốc.
5. (should) travel
Mary gợi ý rằng chúng tôi đi du lịch về phía Nam Việt Nam mùa hè này.
6. (should) carry
Có phải giáo viên đã gợi ý chúng ta tiến hành một dự án về bảo vệ môi trường ở Việt Nam?
7. holding
Peter gợi ý tổ chức một bữa tiệc để kỉ niệm sinh nhật bạn anh ấy vào ngày mai.
8. (should) pay
Chú của tôi gợi ý rằng gia đình tôi nên thăm chùa Hương.

Bài 11:

1. My sister suggested that I (should) take a rest from work.
2. Tom suggested going to the sea that weekend.
3. Jane suggested that Jim should never play truant again.
4. My mom suggested going out and enjoying the weather.
5. My friend suggested that I (should) go to Hoan Kiem Lake if I visited Hanoi.
6. Jane's mother suggested that she (should) finish her homework before going out.
7. Peter suggested working out the solution together.
8. My father suggested that I (should) take any opportunities that I had.

Bài 12:

1. C. attractions tourist attraction: điểm thu hút khách du lịch

2. A. is listed

Giải thích: Động từ ở dạng bị động thì hiện tại đơn

3. C. Despite

4. D. Legend

Giải thích: "Legend has it": Truyền thuyết kể rằng

5. A. defeat

Giải thích: Cấu trúc **help sb V (nguyên thể)**

6. B. scattered: rải rắc

7. A. is believed

Giải thích: Cấu trúc câu bị động không ngôi với động từ tường thuật "believe": "**It + is + believed + that + S+V**".

8. A. into turn into: biến thành **Bài 13:**

1. A

Dẫn chứng:

- Southeast and Eastern England: Cloudy, **a little rain or mist in places at first**. Some sunny intervals developing.

-Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England: Mostly cloudy, some sunny intervals rain spreading from west later.

-Southwest England and Wales: Cloudy, rain spreading from West.

-Central, Southern and Northwest Scotland: cloudy, occasional rain or

mist. 2. B

Dẫn chứng:

-Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England: Mostly cloudy, some sunny intervals **rain spreading from west later**.

-Southwest England and Wales: Cloudy, **rain spreading from West**.

-Central, Southern and Northwest Scotland: Cloudy, occasional rain or mist, **more steady rain spreading from West**.

-Northeast Scotland, Orkney, Shetland: Mostly cloudy, a little rain or mist, **more steady rain later**. 3. C

Dẫn chứng: Southwest England and Wales: Cloudy, rain spreading from West

4. D

Dẫn chứng: Temperature a little above normal, 7 to 9°C.

5. D

Dẫn chứng: Occasional rain in some areas will die out and be followed by brighter weather spreading from the west.

UNIT

06

VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW

Bài 1:

1. had done 6. had traveled
2. had already finished 7. had written
3. had never been 8. hadn't attended
4. had started 9. had read 5. had Jim been 10. Had you cleaned

Bài 2:

1. came – had finished 9. admitted – had broken
2. had lived – moved 10. had you done – came
3. woke – had already been 11. felt – had not prepared
4. got – had worked 12. Did Peter come – had finished
5. had picked – went 13. had prepared – invited
6. told – had served 14. bought – had traveled
7. went 15. saw – stormed
8. was – had performed

Giải thích: Thì quá khứ hoàn thành dùng cho hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ. Vậy nên trong những câu trên, hành động nào diễn ra trước sẽ chia ở thì quá khứ đơn, hành động nào diễn ra sau sẽ chia về thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

Bài 3:

1. Before Peter went to university, he had taken a gap year.
2. Where had you been before you came home?
3. There had been many trees along the street before people cut them down.
4. Jim had been very upset before Mary cheered him up.
5. She told me yesterday that she had not finished her assignment yet.
6. What happened after Jim had proposed to Jane?
7. Had you eaten dinner before you came here?
8. Peter had travel a lot before his leg was seriously injured in an accident.

Bài 4:

1. had commuted

Trong quá khứ, mọi người đã di chuyển bằng xe điện trước khi nó bị thay thế bởi những phương tiện giao thông hiện đại hơn.

2. had suffered

Gia đình tôi đã trải qua nghèo đói trước khi chúng tôi nhận được sự giúp đỡ từ người dân địa phương.

3. was

Đã có sự tăng lên chỉ rất nhỏ trong lượng tiền chúng tôi kiếm được hàng tháng sau khi tôi thay đổi công việc.

4. had mushroomed

Ngành công nghiệp dịch vụ ở vùng chúng tôi đã phát triển rất nhanh trước kì suy thoái kinh tế.

5. hadn't built

Họ đã không xây bất cứ một cây cầu vượt nào ở vùng này trước năm 2014.

6. had cooperated

Mary và Jane đã hợp tác chặt chẽ trong dự án trước khi họ ghét nhau.

7. had people done

Mọi người đã làm gì để kiếm sống trước khi họ làm việc trong nhà máy đó?

8. had tried

Họ đã cố gắng vài lần trước khi họ từ bỏ giấc mơ.

9. had evacuated

Chính quyền địa phương đã sơ tán mọi người khỏi vùng nguy hiểm trước khi cơn lũ đến.

10. had always wanted

Tôi đã luôn muốn trở thành một siêu nhân trước khi tôi nhận ra siêu nhân không có thật.

Bài 5:

1. It is hard for Jim to do this task.

2. It is not easy for me to pass the test.

3. It is challenging for you to change your job now.

Giải thích: Cấu trúc "It + be + adj + (for O) + to V..."

4. Mary is always afraid to try anything new.

5. Are you confident to win the competition?

6. My mother is pleased to see me at home now.

Giải thích: Cấu trúc "S + be + adj + to V ..."

7. I am sorry to hear that you had an accident last week.

8. I am glad that you come to my party.

9. It is not surprising that Peter is the best student in his class.

10. I am convinced that Peter is right.

Giải thích: Cấu trúc: "S + be + adj + that + S + V..."

Bài 6:

1. **Lỗi sai:** I sure

Sửa: I am sure

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “S + be + adj + that + S + V...”

2. **Lỗi sai:** presenting

Sửa: to present

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “S + be + adj + to V...”

3. **Lỗi sai:** that

Sửa: for

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ...”

4. **Lỗi sai:** winning

Sửa: to win

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ...”

5. **Lỗi sai:** hearing

Sửa: to hear

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “S + be + adj + to V...”

6. **Lỗi sai:** to be

Sửa: is

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “S + be + adj + that + S + V ...”

7. **Lỗi sai:** astonished

Sửa: was astonished

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “S + be + adj + that + S + V..”

8. **Lỗi sai:** pass

Sửa: to pass

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ...”

9. **Lỗi sai:** he able

Sửa: able

10. **Lỗi sai:** don't

Sửa: aren't

Giải thích: Cấu trúc “S + be + adj + that + S + V..”

Bài 7:

1. I am so thankful that you help me with my homework.

Tôi rất biết ơn vì bạn giúp tôi làm bài tập.

2. It has been very difficult for me to learn English.

Rất khó cho tôi để học Tiếng Anh.

3. It's interesting for me to go to the museum.

Với tôi thì đi bảo tàng rất thú vị.

4. Peter was glad that his classmates came to his birthday party yesterday.

Peter đã rất vui vì bạn cùng lớp của cậu ấy đã đến tiệc sinh nhật của cậu ấy.

5. It must be very boring to attend that meeting.
Tham dự buổi họp đó chắc hẳn sẽ rất chán.
6. It's hard to believe that Jim will move his house next week.
Thật khó tin rằng Jim sẽ chuyển nhà tuần sau.
7. It's dangerous for children to play with knife.
Trẻ em chơi dao rất nguy hiểm.
8. I am sure that he has stolen my bike.
Tôi chắc chắn rằng anh ta đã lấy cắp xe đạp của tôi.

Bài 8:

1. It is not difficult for me to learn English.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ...**"
2. Jim was very confident to say that he was the best.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**S + be + adj + to V...**"
3. Peter was very happy to receive a letter from his foreign friend yesterday.
4. I am afraid that I can't come to your party this weekend.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**S + be + adj + that + S + V...**"
5. It is not as easy to do gardening as it looks.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ...**"
6. It was not difficult for me to make the last decision.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ...**"
7. I think Peter is very happy that he has won a lottery.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**It + be + adj + that + S + V ...**"
8. You were so lucky to run into a famous singer.
*Giải thích:*Cấu trúc "**S + be + adj + to V ...**"

Bài 9:

1. had owned
2. had expected – told
3. had been – to carry – gave
4. was – to find – had not done
5. Had you stayed – found
6. arrived – had already left
7. came – was – to realize – had broken
8. Was it – to understand
9. walked – was – had prepared
10. Were you

Giải thích: Vận dụng thì quá khứ hoàn thành, quá khứ đơn và các cấu trúc với tính từ để cho dạng đúng của các động từ trên.

Bài 10:

1. By the time Peter came, everyone had already left
2. They had really enjoyed themselves at the party before they had to go home.
3. It had been boring for me to learn Japanese before I had a new teacher.
4. Yesterday it was surprising that my sister had cooked dinner.
5. I was annoyed that my brother hadn't cleaned the house before he went out.
6. Were you happy to know that your mother gave you a special gift yesterday?
7. Peter was disappointed to know his final scores.
8. It was difficult for me to accept the fact that I didn't get that job.

Bài 11:

1. A

Giải thích: Cấu trúc "It + be + adj + (for O) + to V..."

2. B. had always been
3. C. passed
4. C. yet :nhưng, tuy nhiên
5. D. to share

Giải thích: Cấu trúc "S + be + adj + to V ..."

6. B. regarded:coi như, coi là
7. C. for

Giải thích: Cấu trúc "It + be + adj + (for O) + to V ..."

8. A. to

Giải thích: Cấu trúc: Sprefer sth to sth: thích cái gì hơn cái gì

Bài 12:

1. B

Dẫn chứng: The polyester bottle was born in the 1970s, when soft drinks companies: like Coca Cola started selling their drinks in giant two-litre containers. Because of the build-up of the pressure of gas in these large containers, glass was unsuitable.

2. A

Dẫn chứng: All the plastics manufacturers have been experiencing hard times as their traditional products have been doing badly world-wide for the last few years. Between 1982 and 1984 the Plastics Division of ICI had lost a hundred and twenty million dollars, and they felt that the most hopeful new market was in packaging, bottles and cans.

3. C

Dẫn chứng: The public, though, have been more difficult to persuade. ICI's commercial department is developing different bottles with interesting shapes, to try and make them visually more attractive to the public.

4. D

Dẫn chứng: Polyester bottles are virtually unbreakable.

5. C

Dẫn chứng: The problem here is the high temperatures necessary for cooking the food in the container.

UNIT

07

RECIPES AND EATING HABITS

Bài 1:

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|----------|
| 1. Ø | 2. An | 3. an | 4. a – a |
| 5. Ø | 6. a | 7. Ø | 8. an |
| 9. Ø | 10. a | 11. an | 12. a |
| 13. Ø | 14. an | 15. Ø | |

Bài 2:

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|-----------------|---------|
| 1. any | 2. any | 3. some | 4. any |
| 5. any | 6. some | 7. any | 8. some |
| 9. some | 10. some | 11. some – some | 12. any |
| 13. some | 14. some – some | 15. some | |

Bài 3:

- | | | | |
|----------|----------------|---------|---------|
| 1. any | 2. a | 3. some | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. a | 7. any | 8. a |
| 9. a | 10. a | 11. any | 12. any |
| 13. some | 14. any – some | 15. any | |

Bài 4:

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. slice | 2. glass | 3. kilos | 4. pitchers |
| 5. bowl | 6. cartoon | 7. cloves | 8. handful |
| 9. heads | 10. pinch | | |

Bài 5:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. some => any | 2. spoontable => tablespoon |
| 3. any => some | 4. a => the |
| 5. an => a | 6. some => any |
| 7. a=>any | 8. pitchers =>tins |
| 9. a => some | 10. stick => sticks |

Bài 6:

1 - e 2 - f 3 - a 4 - b 5 - c 6 - d 7 - g 8 - h

1. Nếu bạn muốn trở thành một đầu bếp giỏi, (e) bạn phải luyện tập nấu nướng hàng ngày.
2. Kể cả nếu Kate xin bạn cho cô ấy nấu nướng, (f) bạn không nên cho phép cô ấy.
3. Nếu bạn không hoàn thành bài tập, (a) bạn không được xem TV hay chơi điện tử.
4. Nếu bạn không nghe lời giáo viên, (b) bạn sẽ gặp rắc rối lớn.
5. Nếu bạn muốn vào trung tâm thị trấn, (c) bạn có thể bắt xe buýt số 03.
6. Nếu bạn bận, (d) bạn có thể không đến dự buổi họp.
7. Nếu Peter nhận ra khả năng của cậu ấy, (g) cậu ấy có thể thành công hơn trong cuộc sống.
8. Nếu tôi tiết kiệm đủ tiền cho đến cuối năm nay, tôi chắc chắn đi một chuyến đi với gia đình.

Bài 7:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. doesn't - go | 6. will just waste - takes |
| 2. starts - will be | 7. is - not buy |
| 3. doesn't make - get | 8. pays - will fail |
| 4. are - not come | 9. will be - don't start |
| 5. not leave - allow | 10. will not permit - promise |

Bài 8:

1. If you don't stop telling lies, no one will trust you anymore.
2. If you don't pay attention to the teacher, you can't understand the lessons.
3. If you don't go to bed early, you may be exhausted the next morning.
4. If you save money from now, you can reward yourself with a long vacation at the end of the year.
5. If you read more books, you can broaden your knowledge.
6. If you brush your teeth often, you won't get toothache.
7. If you don't listen carefully, you won't know what to do.
8. If you don't want to get sick, you should eat more healthily.

Bài 9:

1. I will never forgive him even if he apologizes to me.
Tôi sẽ không bao giờ tha thứ cho anh ta kể cả nếu anh ta xin lỗi tôi.
2. You may leave early if you have to.
Bạn có thể rời đi sớm nếu bạn phải đi.
3. If you happen to visit Thailand, you should try the local specialties.
Nếu bạn có dịp đi Thái Lan, bạn nên thử đặc sản địa phương.
4. If you work harder, you can achieve more in your life.
Nếu bạn làm việc chăm chỉ hơn, bạn có thể đạt được nhiều hơn trong cuộc sống.
5. If James wants to get promotion, he must show his hard work and dedication.
Nếu James muốn thăng chức, anh ấy phải chứng tỏ sự chăm chỉ và tận tụy của mình.
6. Will you come to my house if you can afford time?
7. What can he do if he wants to change his job?

Anh ta có thể làm gì nếu anh ta muốn đổi công việc?

8. If you are in trouble, you can call me for help.

Nếu bạn gặp khó khăn, bạn có thể gọi tôi để nhờ giúp đỡ.

Bài 10:

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. some | 9. any |
| 2. some | 10. some |
| 3. any | 11. a |
| 4. any | 12. any |
| 5. some | 13. any |
| 6. any | 14. any |
| 7. a | 15. any |
| 8. a | |

Bài 11:

- | | |
|------------|--------------------------|
| 1. bag | 5. bottle |
| 2. glasses | 6. tablespoon |
| 3. pinch | 7. kilo 4. pot 8. leaves |

Bài 12:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I will => I | 5. could => can |
| 2. can have to => will | 6. could => can |
| 3. will hope => hope | 7. should she => she should |
| 4. you should want => you want | 8. would => should |

Bài 13:

1. Jim always asks me what I will do if I see a shooting star.
2. My mother often adds some sticks of cinnamon in the soup.
3. If you can't drink black coffee, you can add some milk or sugar.
4. How will the cake taste if we add some drops of olive oil?
5. My son won't eat salad if there are tomatoes in it.
6. My sister often eats some slices of bread with some strawberry jam for breakfast.
7. Yesterday my mother and I bought some tins of sardine and some vegetables.
8. If you want your dish to look better, you should garnish it with vegetables.

Bài 14:

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. C | 5. A |
| 2. D | 6. B |
| 3. B | 7. B |
| 4. A | 8. B |

Bài 15:

1. A
2. C

3. C
4. B
5. B

UNIT

08

TOURISM

Bài 1:

1. The - the 6. Ø 11. Ø
2. Ø 7. the 12. the
3. the 8. the 13. the
4. Ø 9. the 14. the
5. the 10. the 15. Ø

Bài 2:

1. A 6. A 11. C
2. B 7. A 12. B
3. A 8. C 13. D
4. C 9. A 14. C
5. B 10. A 15. D

Bài 3:

1. Ø - a - the 6. Ø 11. the-the
2. the 7. a - the 12. Ø
3. the - Ø 8. the 13. a- a- the- the
4. the 9. a- a- a- a 14. the
5. Ø - Ø 10. Ø 15. Ø

Bài 4:

1. Many people think that the lead is the heaviest metal. => Ø
2. Young people are always open-minded than old. => the old
3. The windows are supposed to let in natural light. => Ø
4. The most of the students in our class comes from Hanoi. => Ø
5. Do you know that Alps are the most extensive mountain range system? => the Alps
6. Mary doesn't enjoy tea parties and the gossip. => Ø
7. I have a Friend who i s studying in Netherlands. => the Netherlands
8. I think the light bulb is the very important invention of Thomas Edison. => a

9. A relationship between Jim and Jane has turned sour since last year. =>The
10. The news came as the shock to me. => a

Bài 5:

1. A friend of mine has come back from the UK after a long vacation.
2. Hundreds of people will join the carnival in Rio de Janeiro next month.
3. Last year, I went on an expedition to the North Pole.
4. I hope I can visit the longest river in Europe, the Volga, in the future.
5. People used to believe that the Sun and all the stars orbited around the Earth.
6. I often pay a visit to the local museum on Sunday.
7. Mary has taken care of all the members of our team since we set off for London.
8. I have always wanted to climb Mount Everest since I was a boy.

Bài 6:

1. the
2. Ø - the - Ø
3. Ø - the - Ø
4. Ø - Ø
5. the - the - the
6. a - the - the - the
7. the - the - the - a
8. the - the - the - the - the - the- Ø - Ø - the - the - the
9. a - an - Ø - Ø - the - the 10. a - Ø- the - the - the - the - the

Bài 7:

1. Ø excursions 5. the - destinations
2. the resort 6. a souvenir
3. a tour guide 7. Ø accommodations
4. Ø sightseeing 8. a cruise

Bài 8:

1. D 3. B 5. C 7. D
2. D 4. B 6. D 8. A

Bài 9:

1. T
Dẫn chứng: Each day's timetable is handed out as you enter.

2. F
Dẫn chứng: no children or adults allowed on their own

3. T
Dẫn chứng: At the South Banff Centre young dancers can join ... with the English National Ballet on 3 August. On 4 August... African dance. For example, on 21 August the Teatro Buendia from Cuba...

4. F

5. T

Dẫn chứng: The Tower Hill Pageant is a dark ride museum showing the history of the City of London.

6. F

Dẫn chứng: Outside, the Town Crier calls visitors to Coin striking when children can beat out copies of old coins in metal using traditional methods.

7. T

Dẫn chứng: You can learn about film-making in special classes and there is a special exhibition at eye-level for very young children under one metre tall

8. F

Dẫn chứng: There is a special exhibition at eye-level for very young children under one metre tall.

9. T

10. F

UNIT

09

ENGLISH IN THE WORLD

Bài 1:

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. f | 2. c | 3. e | 4. h |
| 5. j | 6. a | 7. l | 8. g |
| 9. b | 10. d | | |

Bài 2:

1. If I **were** you, I would practice more often for the upcoming test.
2. I **would spend** a lot of money if I won the lottery.
3. What **would you do** if I gave you one million dollars?
4. If I met Rihanna, I **would say** hallo.
5. I would take the underground every day, if I **lived** in London.
6. You would feel a lot better, if you **didn't smoke** so much.
7. If I **were** you, I would follow your mum's advice.
8. I would run away if I **saw** a ghost
9. If I were you, I **would accept** the offer.
10. If you **had to** choose a place to live, which one would you choose?
11. What would you do if you **saw** a robbery?

Bài 3:

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. would learn | 2. asked | 3. are | 4. will lend |
| 5. would get | 6. came | 7. will see | 8. has |
| 9. would tell | 10. will wash | 11. will scream | 12. swam |
| 13. win | 14. ran | 15. will buy | |

Bài 4:

- | | | |
|--------|----------|----------|
| 1. who | 2. who | 3. which |
| 4. who | 5. which | 6. which |

Bài 5:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. whose part was so dangerous | 9. that you dig with |
| 2. that was on the cupboard | 10. that I told you about |
| 3. that belonged to her. | 11. whose only ambition is to be in power |
| 4. whose door is scratched | 12. that we bought the ring from |
| 5. that I want to work with | 13. whose price is too high |

6. whose test were a failure 14. that we listened to
7. that I got it from. 15. whose brother kills him
8. whose roof was made of red tiles 16. whose houses were badly damaged
1. which 8. when 15. when
2. where 9. where 16. which
3. which 10. whom Mary is talking to?/ 17. which
4. who to whom Mary is talking. 18. whom you will have to talk to
5. which 11. which tomorrow/ to whom you will
6. whose 12. who have to talk tomorrow.
7. which 13. where 19. where
14. which 20. which
21. which

Bài 6:

1. see - will tell 11. would make-took 21. will lose - stops
2. will meet - go 12. won't need - doesn't rain 22. would be - had
3. slept - would improve 13. thinks - will form 23. wouldn't phone - was
4. wanted - would ring up 14. catch - will arrive 24. loved - wouldn't fight
5. need - will help 15. will find - looks 25. is - will try
6. will have - is 16. thought - would say 26. does - will punish
7. would understand - spoke 17. promised - would forgive 27. asked - would marry
8. see-will show 18. want - will come 28. would get - walked
9. will finish-can 19. could - would come 29. drinks - will feel
10. gave - wouldn't be able 20. wait - will bring 30. will be - is

Bài 7:

1. She worked for a man who / that used to be an athlete.
2. They called a lawyer who / that lived nearby.
3. I sent an email to my brother who / that lives in Australia.
4. The customer liked the waitress who/that was very friendly.
5. We broke the computer which / that belonged to my father.
6. I dropped a glass which / that was new.
7. She loves books which / that have happy endings.
8. They live in a city which / that is in the north of England.
9. The man who / that is wearing a blue jumper is in the garden.
10. The girl who / that is from India works in a bank.
11. My sister who / that lives in Australia has three children,
12. The waiter who / that was wearing a blue shirt was rude.

13. The money which / that belongs to John is in the kitchen.
14. The table which / that was my grandmother's got broken.
15. The television which / that was bought 20 years ago was stolen.
16. The fruit which/that isn't fresh is on the table.

Bài 9:

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| 1. dress | 2. make | 3. windows | 4. call |
| 5. give | 6. play | 7. eat | 8. bowl |
| 9. peel | 10. throw | 11. see | 12. name |
| 13. lived | 14. come | | |

Bài 10:

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. D | 3. A |
| 4. B | 5. D | |

UNIT

10

SPACE TRAVEL

Bài 1:

1. felt, had eaten 2. had examined, had 3. called, had gone 4. finished, had come 5. threw, had read 6. had spent, asked 7. gave, had corrected 8. rose, had started

Bài 2:

1. F, was 5. F, went to lunch 8. T
2. T 6. T 9. F, has seen
3. F, was a student 7. F, they recognized 10. F, he has studied 4. T

Bài 3:

1. whose 5. where 9. which 13. whom
2. where 6. whose 10. whom 14. which
3. who 7. whom 11. where 15. who 4. whose 8. who 12. which 16. which

Bài 4:

1. We stayed at the hotel the Tour Guide Magazine recommended.
2. A few people we invited to our party didn't show up.
3. The pickpocket the police took to prison last week has just been released.
4. Paul didn't seem to like the girl Richard brought to dinner.
5. I enjoyed talking to the old lady who has just finished her second cooking book.
6. The recipes we exchanged during our chat will probably appear in her next book.
7. Everybody at the party tried to help the young lady who got injured at the swimming pool.
8. The man we saw coming out of our neighbour's flat is her brother.
9. What was the name of the actor whose car broke down?
10. Who's the actress everybody was talking about?
11. The teacher who organized our Drama Club is leaving for Germany next week.
12. The school where I studied as a girl has been renovated.

Chú ý: Câu 4 và câu 9 có thể trao đổi đáp án với nhau.

Bài 5:

1. Pass me the dictionary WHICH I put on the shelf.
2. Will you help me to do the exercises WHICH I don't understand?
3. We haven't met Mr Smith yet WHOSE daughter studies with Paul.
4. We won't forget the day WHEN we went to Justin Beaber's concert.

5. Peter has read the book WHICH I recommended him.
6. They sent me a postcard of the hotel WHERE they stayed on holiday.
7. This is my best friend WHO(M) I met at school ten years ago.
8. Is this the man WHO accused you of stealing his wallet?
9. Peter made a lemon cake WHICH is his speciality.
10. I want you to introduce you to Mrs Black WHOSE husband is an engineer.
11. Can you show me the room WHERE meetings are held?
12. I don't know the man WHO Sue is dancing with/with WHOM Sue is dancing.
13. We last saw Mary on Christmas Day WHEN she came to our party.
14. You have to correct the mistakes WHICH you've made in the letter.
15. I like Mrs White WHO is in charge of the Marketing Department.

Bài 6:

1. haven't had 7. wasn't reading 13. I've been doing
2. didn't go 8. didn't have 14. did she go
3. is wearing 9. is beginning 15. I've been playing
4. has grown 10. found 16. do you come
5. haven't decided 11. wasn't 17. since I saw her
6. is being 12. you've been 18. for 20 years

Bài 7:

1. A 2. B 3. A
4. D 5. D

UNIT

11

CHANGING ROLES IN THE SOCIETY

Bài 1:

1. A new computer will be bought by Jane.
2. It will be Installed by her boyfriend.
3. The museum will be visited by millions of people.
4. The contract will be signed by our boss.
5. It will not be done by you.
6. The new film will not be shown by them.
7. Sue will not be seen by him.
8. He will not be asked by them.

9. Will a new worker be employed by the company?
10. Will the shower be repaired by the plumber?

Bài 2:

1. The exhibition will be visited.
2. The windows will be cleaned.
3. The message will be read.
4. The thief will be arrested.
5. The photo will be taken.
6. These songs will be sung.
7. The sign will not be seen.
8. A dictionary will not be used.
9. Credit cards will not be accepted.
10. The ring will not be found.

Bài 3:

1. who
2. which
3. who
4. who
5. which

Bài 4:

1. Al Gore, who won the Nobel Prize, gave a long and boring speech.
2. Starbucks, which does business all over the world, wants to open new stores in China.
3. Social network sites, which are very popular, will definitely change business.
4. Scientists are working with stem cells, which will revolutionize medicine.
5. Last week, Jim Taylor interviewed Sally Thomson, who is my neighbour.
6. Mr Brown, who enjoys going to the theatre, has been invited to join our club.
7. Whiting House, which was built in 1856, is an important local monument.
8. Bono, who is a famous musician, signed autographs at Tower Records yesterday.
9. John F. Kennedy, who was president of the USA, was assassinated in 1963.
10. The Queen will open a new hospital, which is in Jarvis Street.

Bài 5:

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. D | 4. C |
| 5. A | 6. D | 7. B | 8. C |

Bài 6:

- 1.

Defining: My classmate who will visit my aunt this Sunday is Peter Pan.

Non-defining: Peter, who was my classmate, will visit my aunt this Sunday.

2.

Defining: The lovely boy who is in my class is Kenny.

Non-defining: Kenny, who is the lovely boy, is in my class.

3.

Defining: The horrible person who is arguing with Peggy is Mary.

Non-defining: Mary, who is the horrible person, is arguing with Peggy.

4.

Defining: The hardworking person whom I am going shopping with is Anna.

Non-defining: Anna, whom I am going shopping with, is the hardworking person.

5.

Defining: Our school which was found in 1997 is Pig's College.

Non-defining: Pig's College, which was our school, was found in 1997.

6.

Defining: Our principal who will come to visit us this Monday is called Mr Brown.

Non-defining: Mr Brown, who is our principal, will come to visit us this Monday.

7.

Defining: The rare species which Jenny is going to present about are Pandas.

Non-defining: Pandas, which Jenny is going to present about, are the rare species.

8.

Defining: The Chief Director who is shopping in the supermarket is Alex.

Non-defining: Alex, who is the Chief Director of a company, is shopping in the supermarket.

10.

Defining: The landmark of America which has been collapsed is the World Trade Centre.

Non-defining: The World Trade Centre, which is the landmark of America, has been collapsed.

11.

Defining: The greatest shopping mall which Mary is shopping in is Sogo.

Non-defining: Sogo, which Mary is shopping in, is the greatest shopping mall.

12.

Defining: I am one of the intelligent persons who like computer games.

Non-defining: I, who am one of the intelligent persons, like playing computer games

Bài 7:

1. F, which/that 6. T

2. F, whose experience 7. F, who/that

3. T 8. T

4. F, which/that 9. F, who/that 5. T 10. F, whose photograph

Bài 8:

1. B
2. B
3. E

UNIT

12

MY FUTURE CAREER

Bài 1:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Although | 2. Despite/ In spite of |
| 3. Although | 4. Despite/ In spite of |
| 5. Despite/ In spite of | 6. Although |
| 7. Although | 8. Despite/ In spite of |
| 9. Despite/ In spite of | 10. Although |
| 11. Despite/ In spite of | 12. Despite/ In spite of |
| 13. Despite/ In spite of | 14. Despite/ In spite of |
| 15. Although | |

Giải thích: In spite of/Despite + N/ NP/ V-ing = Although + S + V

Bài 2:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. In spite of Sherry's excellent grades | 6. despite the noise |
| 2. in spite of the danger | 7. Despite the cost/ the high cost |
| 3. In spite of the very cold weather | 8. Despite the extremely hot weather |
| 4. In spite of the very hard work | 9. despite his illness / being ill |
| 5. In spite of having very little money, Jane... | 10. despite never finishing college |

Bài 3:

- Although Dave smokes, he seems to be in good health.
- I couldn't sleep despite being tired.
- Max didn't notice the sign even though it was right in front of him.
- Kate never learnt Spanish although she lived in Spain for many years.
- Despite being a millionaire, Joe hates spending money./ Despite his wealth, Joe hates spending money.
- Despite my good advice, he failed.
- In spite of his poor vision, he reads books.
- Despite her illness, she went to work. / Despite being ill, she went to work.
- In spite of the bad weather, we went out.
- In spite of his poor health, he attends office regularly.

Bài 4:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. marrying | 2. saying |
|-------------|-----------|

3. seeing
5. leaving
7. reading
9. saying
11. talking
13. phoning

Bài 5:

1. to go
3. going
5. to get
7. paying
9. getting
11. to pack/ packing
13. asking
15. seeing

Bài 6:

1. considered
3. enjoy
5. stop
7. had hoped
9. agreed
11. would like
13. plan
15. will offer

Bài 7:

1. dancing
3. dancing
5. to take
7. asking
9. feel
11. to rain
13. try
15. dancing
17. to lose

Bài 8:

1. I couldn't sleep despite being tired.
2. Despite having an English name/Despite his English name, he is in fact German.

4. helping
6. staying
8. emigrating
10. travelling
12. telling
14. going

2. to take
4. to leave
6. standing
8. waiting
10. to see
12. packing
14. staying

2. need
4. mind
6. discuss
8. forgot
10. hate
12. quit
14. love

2. go
4. persuade
6. to dance
8. to go
10. going
12. dancing
14. to stop
16. dance

3. Although she had injured her foot/ Although her foot was injured, she managed to walk to the village.
4. I decided to accept the job in spite of the low salary / in spite of the salary being low.
5. We lost the match despite being the better team/ despite the fact that we were the better team.
6. Even though I hadn't eaten for 24 hours, I didn't feel hungry.
7. She was tired, but she went to work.
3. They went out for a walk despite the bad weather.
9. She managed to write although her hand was injured.
10. Although she has plenty of money, she is very mean.

Bài 9:

1. A 3. A 5. A 7. A 9. B 2. B 4. A 6. B 8. A 10. B

Bài 10:

1. having
Giải thích: dread N/V-ing: sợ cái gì
2. to meet
3. to lock/ going
Giải thích: Before/ After+V-ing: Trước/ Sau khi làm gì
4. to explain/ to listen
5. to disguise/ dressing
Giải thích: Sau giới từ by + V-ing
6. writing/waiting
7. driving/ being driven
Giải thích: prefer V-ing to V-ing: thích làm gì hơn làm gì
8. telephoning/ asking/ to look
Giải thích: ask sb to V: yêu cầu ai đó làm gì.
9. to give
10. looking/being
Giải thích: afraid of N/V-ing: sợ cái gì
11. doing
12. to eat
13. to catch/getting/getting
Giải thích: good at + N/V-ing: tốt, giỏi cái gì.
14. working/finishing
15. to forget/ worrying
Giải thích: be worth + V-ing: đáng làm gì
16. getting/ to know/ judging
Giải thích: get to know: dần quen biết

17. to speak/speaking

18. to wait/deciding/to accept

*Giải thích:*advise sb to V: khuyên ai làm gì.

19. lending/ to pay/forgetting/to remember

Bài 11:

1. to build

2. creating

*Giải thích:*succeed in +V-ing: thành công trong việc gì.

3. inventing

*Giải thích:*be known for N/V-ing: được biết đến, nổi tiếng vì cái gì

4. to build

5. sell

6. marketing

*Giải thích:*be responsible for N/ v-ing: chịu trách nhiệm việc gì

7. to expand

*Giải thích:*happen to V: tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên làm gì

8. to make /making

9. to put

10. lower

11. to arrange/arranging

12. repeating

13. to produce

14. to give

*Giải thích:*guarantee to V: cam đoan làm gì

15. to lead

16. to get

17. to pay

18. to give

*Giải thích:*decline to V: từ chối làm gì

19. to donate

Bài 12:

1. Would you prefer to sit by the window or outside on the terrace?

2. They didn't stop smoking all through the meal.

3. I didn't remember to bring my wallet with me.

4. I can't afford to [go to/ eat in] expensive restaurants.

5. I don't mind you sharing my pizza.

6. I hope to have lunch with you some time.
7. They spent all morning arguing about drugs.
8. We must chase it out to prevent it from doing any more damage.

Bài 13:

1. C 4. B
2. B 5. A
3. D